GUIDE

NEW HELLO!



By a group of supervisors



ENGLISH

معاك
Ma3ak App
التطبيق التفاعلى
للتعلم عن بعد

2nd Prep.
2021
FIRST TERM

الصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Unit 1 Coming home



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; The Railway Children
- **Writing :**
  A text message; an email to a penfriend
- **Listening :**
  A description of a bedroom
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture
- **Language :**
  Present simple
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management
- **Values :**
  Coexistence values
- **Issues :**
  citizenship

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة **المعاصر** للمتابعة.
• ملحق المهارات.

Lessons **1 & 2**



SB pages 2 : 5 WB pages 72 & 73

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

daily (adj), (adv)	يومي - بشكل يومي	way (n)	طريق
routine (n)	روتين (عمل متكرر)	activity (n)	نشاط
sofa (n)	كنبة (أريكة)	block of flats (n)	عمارة سكنية
text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسالة نصية (لشخص على هاتفه المحمول)	interview (ed) (v), (n)	يحاور (شخص) - حوار - مقابلة رسمية

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

Which ..... ?	أى (للاختيار بين شيئين)	baker's = bakery (n)	مخبز
hospital (n)	مستشفى	bed (n)	سرير
coffee (n)	مشروب القهوة	cook (ed) (v), (n)	يطبخ / طباخ
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع	lesson (n)	درس / حصة
sport (n)	رياضة	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
school day (n)	يوم دراسى	person (n)	شخص
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	school work (n)	العمل الدراسى / الواجب المدرسى
bread (n)	خبز		
student (n)	طالب	partner (n)	شريك
parents (n)	الوالدين	country (n)	دولة / بلد

meals

وجبات

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	dinner	وجبة العشاء
lunch	وجبة الغداء		

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

blog (n)	مدونة (على الأنترنت)	free time (n)	وقت الفراغ
photo (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية	computer games (n)	ألعاب الحاسوب
people (n)	ناس / أشخاص	fun (n)	متعة
start (ed) (v)	يبدأ	hobby (n)	هواية

school subjects (n)	مواد دراسية	interests (n)	اهتمامات
chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج	somewhere (adv)	مكان ما
break (n)	راحة / فسحة	cousins (n)	أولاد العم / الخال / العمة / الخالة
exams (n)	اختبارات	sleeping (n)	النوم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
read	يقرأ	read	read
come	يأتى	came	come
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
make	يصنع	made	made
leave	يغادر / يرحل	left	left
spend	يقضى (وقت)	spent	spent
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
take	يأخذ / يستقل	took	taken

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
late	متأخر	early	مبكر
the same as	نفس (الشئ)	different to/from	مختلف عن
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

block of flats	a tall building with more than one floor with flats for people to live in	عمارة سكنية
interview	a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life	مقابلة رسمية
routine	your usual way of doing things, especially when you do them in a fixed order at the same time	روتين (عمل متكرر)

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation	Meaning
read	on the sofa	يقرأ وهو جالس على الأريكة
play	chess	يلعب لعبة الشطرنج
	computer games	يلعب ألعاب الحاسوب
have	breakfast / lunch / dinner	يتناول وجبة (الإفطار / الغداء / العشاء)
	a routine	لديه نظام يومي ثابت
	coffee	يشرب مشروب قهوة
	fun	يستمتع
make	breakfast	يعد وجبة الإفطار
	dinner	يعد وجبة العشاء
text	friends	يرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائه على الهاتف المحمول
do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة
	homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي
	the same things	يقوم بنفس الأشياء
	exercise	يتدرب
	sport	يمارس الرياضة
take	the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
spend	time	يقضى وقتًا
	money	ينفق مالا

II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 2

I'm Mariam. My daily routine(1) is the same every school day(2)! I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast(3). I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents(4) work at the hospital. They get home(5) late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa(6), watch TV and text my friends(7). Then I go to bed(8)!



Check Vocabulary

روتين يومى (1)	يوم دراسى (2)	تعد / تصنع إفطارى (3)	والداى (4)
يصل المنزل (5)	يقرأ جالسًا على الأريكة (6)	أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائى (على الهاتف) (7)	يذهب للنوم (8)

- on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Mariam doesn't get up at 7 am. She gets up at 6.30. Mariam doesn't make breakfast. Her mum always makes it. Her parents don't work at a school. They work at a hospital. They don't get home early. They get home late.

- on Lesson 2 SB page 4

My best friend's family



Hi everyone. Today's interview[1] is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right[2]!

How many people are in your family, Sherifa ?

There are five people : me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up ?

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work[3]. I walk to[4] school with my brothers.

Do you like to study ?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject[5] is English.

What do you do in the evening ?

I listen to music every day. My dad and I sometimes play chess[6]. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

Check Vocabulary

حوار (1)	على اليمين (2)	يصل إلى العمل (3)
يمشي إلى (4)	مادة دراسية (5)	لعبة الشطرنج (6)

Language Notes: Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
text (v)	يرسل رسائل نصية على الهاتف المحمول لشخص ما	– Text me when you are on your way to work.
text (n)	نص (كتاب، خطاب .. إلخ)	– There are many spelling mistakes in the text.
textbook (n)	كتاب دراسي (تعليمي)	– The history textbook of mine was lost.
daily (adj)	تستخدم كصفة بمعنى (يومي)	– My daily routine is the same every school day! لاحظ أنها تسبق الاسم *(SB page 2)*
daily (adv)	تستخدم كظرف بمعنى (بشكل يومي)	– I go to the baker's with my mother daily. لاحظ أنها تتبع الفعل *(WB page 72)*
help	تستخدم بمعنى يساعد ويتبعه مفعول ثم مصدر الفعل مسبوقًا بـ (to) أو بدون (to)	– I often help mum make dinner. *(SB page 2)* – I help mum to make dinner. ومن الممكن ألا يكون بعده مفعول
help شخص with ..	يساعد شخص في ...	– Can you help me with my homework?
come home get home leave home	لاحظ كلمة home بعد هذه الأفعال لا يأتي قبلها حروف جر	– What time do students come home from school in that country ? *(SB page 2)* – They get home late. *(SB page 2)* – My dad leaves home before we get up. *(SB page 4)*
On Saturdays = every Saturday	أيام السبت = كل يوم سبت لاحظ أن حرف الجر (on) يستخدم قبل أيام الاسبوع	– On Saturdays, I always get up at 11 o'clock. *(SB page 3)* = Every Saturday, I always get up at 11 o'clock.
that's why	تستخدم بمعنى (ولهذا السبب) لتعبر عن النتيجة = so	– My dad starts work very early. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. *(SB page 4)*

make	يستخدم بمعنى يصنع أو يعد (شيئًا) ويستخدم بمعنى يجعل أو يسبب ويتبع بالمفعول ثم المصدر أو الصفة	– My mum always makes my breakfast. *(SB page 2)* – He makes me laugh. – She makes me angry.
by	وسائل المواصلات يسبقها حرف الجر (by)	– I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. *(SB page 2)*
in	أما فترات الليل والنهار يسبقها حرف الجر in ماعدا (night) تسبق بـ (at)	– In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and text my friends. *(SB page 2)*

Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

on her way to	فى طريقها إلى ...	– Mariam sometimes listens to music on her way to school. *(SB page 3)*
live with (شخص)	يعيش مع	– She lives with her parents and two brothers. *(SB page 4)*
get to school	يصل إلى المدرسة	– How do Sherifa and her brothers get to school ? *(SB page 4)*
on the right	على اليمين	– Sherifa's on the right in the family's photo.
on holiday	فى إجازة	– We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday. *(WB page 72)*
talk to	يتحدث إلى (شخص)	– Who do you usually talk to at break ? *(WB page 73)*

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I saw Ahmed's father on his .... to work this morning.
   a. block b. way c. wire d. wide

2. Can you .... my mother for me because my phone is not working ?
   a. text b. mix c. fix d. try
3. Come and sit on this .... : four people can sit on it.
   a. armchair b. cupboard c. sofa d. chair
4. I go to the baker's with my mother .... ; we always buy bread every morning.
   a. weekly b. yearly c. monthly d. daily
5. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday because my family likes to have a ....
   a. routine b. drink c. meal d. match
6. Today's .... is with my best friend Sherifa and her family.
   a. blog b. email c. letter d. interview
7. I live in a .... of flats consisting of 12 floors.
   a. bag b. block c. stick d. box

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. SB My mum always .... my breakfast.
   a. makes b. gives c. does d. deletes
9. WB They don't like football. They .... tennis.
   a. buy b. spend c. prefer d. go

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. My father goes to work early, so he .... home before we get up.
    a. texts b. mails c. deals d. leaves
11. I always sit next to the same person in my .... at school.
    a. lessons b. ways c. routines d. weekends
12. This .... sells delicious bread and cakes.
    a. butcher's b. baker's c. chemist's d. grocer's
13. Cooking food is one of my ....
    a. interests b. subjects c. texts d. blocks

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. .... Saturdays, I always drive my children to the park.
    a. On b. At c. In d. For

Unit 1

15. My mother wants me to .... her with the housework.

a. give b. dive c. help d. do

16. Salma always .... to school early.

a. gets b. talks c. wants d. studies

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



Usage الاستخدام

١ تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :

ex. - I always do my homework before I have my dinner.

٢ ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد (verb to be) :

ex. - My cousins sometimes text me.

- We are never late for school.

٣ تستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة على سؤال بـ (How often) :

How often + (do / does) + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ? كم مرة ...؟

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?
* I never walk to school.
- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?
* He always does his homework in the evening.

2. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / They / We / You (فاعل جمع)	+	inf. (المصدر)

He / She / It (فاعل مفرد)	+	inf. (المصدر)	+ s/es/ies

ex. - We usually play tennis on Friday.
- My grandparents sometimes use a computer.

ex. - Rodina sometimes listens to the radio.

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

ex. - My brother often watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex. - Amal always studies hard for her exams.

2 Negative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / we / you / They (اسم جمع) + don't + inf. (المصدر)

ex. I don't get up early on Fridays.

He / she / It (اسم مفرد) + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)

ex. She doesn't walk to school.

لاحظ أن :

- حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفي.

ex. He doesn't play football every Thursday.

- تستخدم (never) فى صيغة النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. The bus never stops near my house.

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

3 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

Do + I / we / you / they + inf. (المصدر) .....?

ex. Do you speak English ?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) .....?

ex. Does she cook well ?

- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

لاحظ أن : حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة الاستفهام + do / does + I / we / you / they / he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) .....?

ex. - What do you study ?

- Where does she go ?

Multiple choice notes ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

1. I .... up at 6.30 in the morning.
   a. always gets b. gets always c. always get d. get always

تم اختيار (always get) لأن ظرف التكرار يجب أن يسبق الفعل الأساسى وفاعل الجملة (I) يأتى بعده الفعل بدون إضافة (s).

2. My father .... work on Saturdays.
   a. don't b. aren't c. doesn't d. isn't

تم اختيار (doesn't) لأن فاعل الجملة مفرد (My father) فتكون صيغة النفى فى زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام (doesn't + inf.).

3. He .... late.
   a. never is b. is never c. always is d. often is

تم اختيار (is never) لأن ظرف التكرار يأتى بعد (V.to be).

3. Making questions تكوين الاسئلة

1. Yes / No questions : أولاً : الأسئلة التى يجُاب عليها بـ Yes أو No وتتكون من :

"V. to Be" (am - is - are - was - were)
"V. to Have" (have - has - had)
"V. to Do" (do - does - did)
will, can .... etc. الخ
+ subject الفاعل + (verb الفعل) + ... ?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهى الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

ex. - Do you have any brothers or sisters ?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
- Does Mariam do the same routine every school day ?
- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

لاحظ يمكن استخدام "V. to Be" كفعل رئيسى فى السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex. Are you happy about the result نتيجة of the match ?
Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

ثانيًا : الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام

2. Wh-questions : كلمة استفهام

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + "V. to Be" / "V. to Have" / "V. to Do" / will / can / ..... etc. إلخ + subject الفاعل + (verb الفعل) + ... ?

لاحظ الآتى

I, We تحول you	do	←	إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط بدون (s)
my, our تحول your	does	←	إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وينتهى بـ (s) أو (es) أو (ies)
I am تحول are you			
I was تحول were you	did	←	إذا كان الفعل فى الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر.

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Whose ...?	ملك من...؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد...؟
When ...?	متى...؟	How high ...?	كم للإرتفاع...؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا...؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق...؟
Who ...?	من (للفاعل العاقل)...؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض/الاتساع...؟
Whom ...?	من (للمفعول العاقل)...؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد...؟
Why ...?	لماذا ...؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول...؟
Where ...?	أين ...؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن...؟
Which ...?	أيهما ...؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة/للطول...؟
How ...?	كيف ...؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر...؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة...؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	Who ... with ?	مع من...؟

Examples :
- What do you do in your free time ? * I read English stories.
- Who will you go to the club with ? * I will go to the club with Ali.
- When did you see Nadia (her) ? * I saw her last week.
- How does she go to school ? * She goes to school by bus.
- Why do you go to the cinema ? * I go to the cinema to watch a film.
- How much did you pay for the watch ? * I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus ? * They go to the circus twice a month.
- Whose book is it ? * It is mine.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Mariam often .... TV in bed.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. is watching
2. WB Hamdi .... drink coffee for breakfast.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. hasn't
3. SB .... does Dina get to school ? - By bus.
   a. When b. Who c. How d. Why
4. WB My cousins .... text me. They text me every day.
   a. sometimes b. usually c. never d. always
5. WB I .... my homework before I have my dinner.
   a. usually do b. do usually c. usually does d. does usually
6. WB .... you live in a block of flats or somewhere else ?
   a. Does b. Are c. Do d. Have

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. .... Mr Brown work on Sundays ? - Yes, he does.
   a. Is b. Does c. Did d. Has

8. They always .... a lot of noise.

a. making
b. make
c. are making
d. are going to make

9. How .... do you go to school ? - Five times a week.

a. many
b. much
c. often
d. long

10. .... ready for the exam ? Yes, I am.

a. Are we
b. Do you
c. Are they
d. Are you

11. They .... talk at the classroom to listen carefully.

a. aren't
b. don't
c. do
d. doesn't

12. Do you get up early every day ? - Yes, I ....

a. do
b. am
c. have
d. can

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB You always don't get up at 11 o'clock. (don't always)
2. WB What does you do to have fun ? (do)
3. SB I often listens to music. (listen)
4. SB Do Mariam do the same every school day ? (does)
5. WB What exercises do you doing every week ? (do)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. I play sometimes football at the weekend. (sometimes play)
7. Does he like koshari ? Yes, he is. (does)
8. She always gets up early at the weekend. She always gets up at 3.00 p.m. (never)
9. What time do your first lesson start this morning ? (does)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. The sun never .... (rise) at night.
2. What .... (you do) every Friday ?
3. Basem .... (not like) cheese.
4. Dr Wafaa .... (get) up late.
5. How often .... (you visit) your uncle ?

IV Speaking Corner

1. Discussing daily routine :

١. مناقشة الروتين اليومى :

Questions	Answers
1. Do you have the same routine every day of the week ? ١. هل لديك نفس الروتين اليومى كل يوم فى الأسبوع ؟	- Yes, I do. ١. نعم لدى نفس الروتين.
2. What do you do when you get up ? ٢. ما الذى تفعله عندما تستيقظ ؟	- I always make breakfast. ٢. أنا دائمًا أعد وجبة الإفطار.
3. What do you always do on your way to school ? ٣. ماذا تفعل دائمًا وأنت فى طريقك إلى المدرسة ؟	- I always listen to music. ٣. استمع دائمًا إلى الموسيقى.
4. How do you get to school ? ٤. كيف تصل الى المدرسة ؟	- By car. ٤. بالسيارة.
5. What do you do in the evenings ? ٥. ماذا تفعل فى أوقات المساء ؟	- I usually text my friends. ٥. عادة ما أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائى على هواتفهم المحمولة.
6. What do you usually do at the weekend ? ٦. ماذا تفعل عادة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- Sometimes I go to my friend's flat and we play computer games. ٦. أحيانًا أذهب إلى شقة صديقى ونلعب ألعاب الحاسوب.
7. What do you do in your free time ? ٧. ماذا تفعل فى وقت فراغك ؟	- I usually play chess with my brother. ٧. عادة ما ألعب الشطرنج مع أخى.

8. Talking about the family :

Questions

1. Do you have any brothers or sisters?
[illegible]
2. How many people are there in your family?
[illegible]
3. Do you live in a block of flats or somewhere else?
[illegible]
4. Do you like football? Why?
[illegible]

Answers

- Yes, I have three [illegible] brothers.
[illegible]
- There are [illegible] people: [illegible] my dad, my mum and two brothers.
[illegible]
- I live in a block of flats.
[illegible]
- Yes, I like football. It's fun and it's good for me.
[illegible]

Writing

Stop here!

[illegible]

"Your daily routine"

1. On Saturdays, I always get up at 11 o'clock.
[illegible]
2. I never have coffee for breakfast.
[illegible]
3. I often listen to music on my way to school.
[illegible]
4. I always go to school by bus with my friends.
[illegible]

General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is this interview about ?
   a. Sherifa b. Sherifa's neighbors
   c. Sherifa and her family d. Sherifa's friends
2. Sherifa is my best ....
   a. niece b. aunt c. sister d. friend
3. How many people are there in Sherifa's family ?
   a. 4 b. 3 c. 5 d. 6
4. They get up at .... a.m.
   a. 6.00 b. 6.30 c. 7.00 d. 8.00

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Leen : Can I ask you some questions ?
Rokaya : (1) yes you can
Leen : (2) when do you get up
Rokaya : I get up at 6.30 a.m.
Leen : (3) what do? you usually do ?
Rokaya : I usually cook breakfast before going to school.
Leen : (4) do you sometimes listen to music
Rokaya : Yes, I sometimes listen to music on my way to school. on your way to scho
Leen : What activity do you do every week ?
Rokaya : (5) I play video games

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

H.W

1. WB What do you do to .... fun ? - I play chess.
   a. make b. have c. try d. cry
2. I prefer sitting on the .... It's more comfortable than the chair.
   a. sofa b. seat c. table d. mat

Lessons **3 & 4**

SB pages 6 : 8 WB pages 74 & 75



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attractive (adj)	جذاب / فاتن	profile (n)	لمحة عن حياة شخص
large (adj)	كبير (الحجم)	feed (v)	يُطعم
terrible (adj)	مفزع - رهيب - فظيع	share (d) (v)	يشارك / يتقاسم
poor (adj)	فقير	tap (n)	صنبور المياه (حنفية)
railway line (n)	خط سكك حديدية	typical (adj)	نمطى / نموذجى
prison (n)	السجن	village (n)	قرية

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

article (n)	مقال	goats (n)	ماعز
potato chips (n)	شرائح البطاطس	garden (n)	حديقة (خاصة)
room (n)	حجرة / غرفة	tea (n)	شاى
street (n)	شارع	watermelon (n)	بطيخ
text message (n)	رسالة نصية	knife (n)	سكين
interesting (adj)	شيق / ممتع	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
research (n)	بحث (علمى)	life (n)	حياة
clear (adj)	واضح	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
grandparents (n)	الأجداد	restaurant (n)	مطعم
mountains (n)	جبال	borrow (ed) (v)	يستلف / يستعير
need (ed) (v)	يحتاج		

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

adventures (n)	مغامرات	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
kind (adj)	طيب / عطوف	road (n)	طريق
train (ed) (v), (n)	يتدرب - قطار	describe (d) (v)	يصف
together (adv)	مع بعض	ending (n)	نهاية
move (d)	ينتقل - ينقل	change (d) (v)	يغير - يتغير
beginning (n)	بداية		

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
feed	يطعم	fed	fed
take	يأخذ	took	taken
know	يعرف	knew	known
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
cut	يقطع	cut	cut

كلمات ومعانيها وعكسها Words, their meanings and opposites

Word الكلمة		meaning المعنى / المرادف	opposite العكس	
outside	خارج	outdoor	inside	داخل
attractive	جذاب	beautiful	ugly	قبيح
large	كبير الحجم	big	small	صغير الحجم
near	قريب	close	far from	بعيدًا عن
terrible	فظيع - رهيب	bad	good	جيد

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

ادرس هذه التعريفات Study these definitions

prison	a place where people go when they do something wrong or bad	سجن
railway line	the metal road that a train travels on	خط سكك حديدية
poor	• people without enough money are this • not having enough money to live well	فقير
attractive	beautiful / nice to look at	جذاب
large	big	كبير الحجم
terrible	very bad	مفزع / رهيب
feed	give food to a person, group or animal	يطعم
tap	something you turn on or off to get water	حنفية (صنبور مياه)

11 Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Lives around the world



Tell us about your life !
- What are your hobbies and interests[1] ?
- What is a typical day[2] in your life ?
- What job do you want to do one day ?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village[3] with my parents, my brother and my sister.



I share a room[4] with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap[5] at the end of street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed the chickens[6], then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اهتمامات	(2) يوم نموذجي	(3) قرية	(4) يتشارك في حجرة	(5) صنبور	(6) يطعم الدجاج

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7



Yunis : Grandma, have you got a watermelon[1] ?
Grandma : Yes, I have. It's on the table.
Yunis : Can I have some, please ? I like watermelon.
Grandma : Yes, of course. We need a knife[2] to cut[3] it !
Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it ?
Grandma : Thank you, Yunis, but be careful[4] with the knife!

Check Vocabulary

(1) بطيخة	(2) سكين	(3) يقطع	(4) حريص

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Hi Amal. Have you got that game[1] called Odd one out ?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other children's games ? My six-year-old[2] cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me

Yes, I have role-play[3] ! Do you remember that game ?

Yes, I do! Can I borrow[4] it this evening ?
My cousin would love it!

Of course. Shall I play it, too? It's better with three people, and I still enjoy that game.

Of course [5]! You can come to my house later[6].

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة	(2) ذات الست سنوات	(3) تبادل الأدوار	(4) يستلف / يستعير	(5) بالطبع	(6) فيما بعد

• on Lesson 3 WB page 74



Ali : This is a nice restaurant[1].
Shall we eat here, Hassan ?

Hassan : Yes, that's a good idea[2].

Waiter[3] : Good evening. Where would you like to sit ?

Ali : Can we sit next to the window ?

Waiter : Of course. What would you like to eat ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مطعم	(2) فكرة جيدة	(3) جرسون

Hassan : Have you got any fish today ?

Waiter : Yes, we've got fish with rice or fish with potato chips[1].

Ali : We'd like fish with rice, please.

Waiter : Shall I bring[2] you some water ?

Hassan : Thank you.

Check Vocabulary

(1) شرائح البطاطس (2) يحضر

- on Lesson 4 SB page 8

The Railway Children by E Nesbit



It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive[1] home with a large[2] garden. One terrible[3] day, two men take their father away from[4] home. The children do not know where he is going or why.



The children move from the city[5] with their mother to a small house near a railway line[6]. The family are poor[7] and life is very different for them. The children have lots of adventures[8] near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes their friend.



The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison[9] for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جذاب	(2) كبير الحجم	(3) رهيب / فظيع	(4) بعيد عن	(5) ينتقل من المدينة
(6) خط سكة حديد	(7) فقير	(8) مغامرات	(9) السجن	

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

الملاحظات اللغوية

Language Notes

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
country	دولة	– France and Italy are European countries.
the country = the countryside	الريف	– I prefer living in the city to living in the country.
outside	يستخدم كصفة بمعنى خارجى تستخدم كظرف بمعنى بالخارج	– There is an outside tap at the end of the street. (SB page 6) – There is an old man outside.
little	تستخدم بمعنى صغير السن والحجم وتسبق الاسم وتستخدم أيضًا بمعنى قليل ويأتى بعدها اسم لا يعد	– I lived in America when I was little. – I saw a little girl in the street. – She has got a little milk in her glass.
share with	يتشارك - يشارك مع	– I share a room with my sister. (SB page 6) – Children share ideas and opinions with their parents.
do something wrong	يفعل شيئًا خطأ	– People who do something wrong go to prison.
six-year-old	هذه التركيبة تستخدم كصفة تسبق الإسم	– My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me. (SB page 7)
forget to + inf. forget (inf. + ing)	ينسى (أن يفعل شئ) ينسى (أنه فعل شئ)	– Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic. (WB page 74) – Hassan forgot bringing the food for the picnic.

suggest	بمعنى يقترح ويتبعه (inf. + ing) او جملة	– Which question suggests doing something ? *(SB page 7)* – He suggested that we should go to Luxor.
Expressions and Prepositions		**التعبيرات وحروف الجر**
at the beginning of	فى بداية	– At the beginning of the story, five people live in a big house. *(WB page 75)*
at the end of	فى نهاية	– There is an outside tap at the end of the street. *(SB page 6)*
take ... away from	يأخذ بعيدًا عن	– Two men take their father away from home. *(SB page 8)*
full of	ملئ بـ	– It has a large garden full of flowers and trees. *(WB page 75)*
careful with	حريص بشأن	– Thank you, Yunis, but be careful with the knife. *(SB page 7)*
in many ways	بعدة طرق	– The old man helps the family in many ways. *(SB page 8)*
ask for	يطلب	– He asked for some food.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Roberta feels .... when some men take their father from their home.
   a. happy b. terrible c. excited d. proud

2. Their new house is in the country near a railway ....
a. line b. letter c. number d. house
3. The farmer doesn't need to .... his goats in the summer, as they can find their own food in the mountains.
a. mind b. send c. feed d. lend
4. My uncle has a .... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants every evening.
a. tap b. lap c. nap d. tab
5. On a/an .... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in the kitchen.
a. terrible b. attractive c. intelligent d. typical
6. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can .... our food.
a. divided b. share c. deliver d. read
7. I live in a city but my grandparents live in a small .... in the country.
a. village b. island c. playground d. court
8. The place where people go when they do something wrong is the ....
a. school b. hospital c. prison d. factory

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

9. WB Shall I help you .... your books ? - No, thanks.
a. carry b. try c. cry d. hurry
10. WB It has a large .... full of flowers and trees.
a. garden b. fountain c. time d. factory
11. SB She helps her mother feed the .... on the farm.
a. hippos b. foxes c. goats d. fish
12. SB The family is so happy to be .... again at last.
a. together b. other c. always d. alone

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

13. The old man's .... gives me more information about his life.
a. box b. letter c. profile d. email
14. My .... are fathers and mothers of my parents.
a. grandchildren b. grandparents c. parents d. cousins
15. He .... Al-Azhar Park as a good place for a picnic.
a. stayed b. travelled c. started d. suggested

16. I did a/an .... about the dinosaurs online for science lesson.
   a. article   b. research   c. picnic   d. profile

17. They travel to many countries to have a lot of ....
   a. adventures   b. gardens   c. roads   d. lives

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

18. The police took the thief away .... his home to prison.
   a. from   b. at   c. to   d. on

19. When you do something ...., you should say sorry.
   a. good   b. wrong   c. nice   d. fine

20. Don't forget .... your homework tomorrow. It's important.
   a. to bring   b. bring   c. brings   d. to bringing

21. You should be careful .... the knife.
   a. of   b. to   c. with   d. on

III Language

Asking questions with Can , Shall & Have you got ?

1. Have you got ... ?   ١. للسؤال عن الملكية نستخدم :

Has (he/she/it) اسم مفرد → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Has your father got a blue car ?
* Yes, he has.
* Yes, he has got a blue car.
* No, he hasn't (got a blue car).

Have (I / we / you / they) اسم جمع → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Have you got any cousins ?
* Yes, I have (five cousins).
* No, I haven't (got any cousins).

2. يستخدم الفعل (Can) في السؤال بمعاني عديدة

A Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No question السؤال بـ(هل)

a Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ?

Yes, I can. No, I can't.

Wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

b ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed ?

B : I can lift these heavy bags.

B Asking for something طلب شيئًا ما

ex. Can I have ice cream, please ?

* No, you can't. Ice cream is not good for you.

3. يستخدم الفعل (Shall) في السؤال بمعاني عديدة

A Making suggestions تقديم اقتراحات

- Hi! Shall we play a game next weekend ?

Agreeing الرد بالموافقة

* Yes, that's a good idea. Let's go to the park tomorrow.

Disagreeing الرد بالرفض

* No, I can't. I'm busy.
* No, I'm sorry. I have a lot of homework.

B Offering help تقديم المساعدة

Shall I help you to cut the watermelon ?

Accepting the offer قبول عرض المساعدة

- Thank you, Yunis, but be careful with the knife !

Refusing the offer رفض عرض المساعدة

- Thanks, I can do it myself (on my own).
- Thanks, I don't need any help.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Have you .... a watermelon, grandma ?
   a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
2. SB Of course ! You can .... to my house later.
   a. comes b. came c. coming d. come
3. WB Shall I .... you some water ?
   a. brought b. brings c. bringing d. bring
4. SB .... you got that game called Odd one out ?
   a. Do b. Can c. Have d. Did
5. WB .... I have a glass of water, please ?
   a. Can b. Have c. Did d. Had

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. .... we eat here, Hassan ? - Yes, that's a good idea.
   a. Have b. Were c. Are d. Shall
7. Has he got an umbrella ? No, he ....
   a. can't b. hasn't c. doesn't have d. doesn't
8. Can you carry this heavy box ? - No, I ....
   a. must b. should c. can d. can't
9. What shall I .... for you ?
   a. did b. does c. done d. do
10. .... you help him with his homework ?
    a. Have b. Can c. Does d. Are

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB <u>Have</u> your father got a computer ? (.....has.....)

2. SB Shall I helps you to cut it ? (help.........)
3. WB Can we sit next to the window ? - No, you can. (can't.........)
4. WB What has you got in your bag ? (have.........)
5. WB No, you can. Ice-cream is not good for you. (can't.........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. What have you get in your bag ? (got.........)
7. Shall Salma ride a camel ? - No, she can't. (can.........)
8. Shall we going to the zoo tomorrow ? (go.........)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Have ...got... (you get) a bike ? No, I haven't.
2. ...shall get... (I shall get) you a drink ?
3. Can ...I have... (have I) a glass of milk, please ?
4. Shall we ...play... (played) tennis together ?

IV Speaking Corner

Asking and answering questions about moving to a new house :

السؤال والإجابة عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد :

Questions ?	Answers ✔
1. How did you feel when you moved to the new house ? Why ? ١. كيف شعرت عندما انتقلت إلى منزل جديد ؟ ولماذا ؟	I felt happy and excited because the new house was comfortable. - شعرت بالسعادة والحماس لأن المنزل الجديد مريح.
2. How did you feel when things changed ? Was it easy or difficult at first ? ٢. كيف شعرت عندما تغيرت الأمور ؟ هل كان الأمر سهلاً أم صعبًا فى البداية ؟	I felt strange. In fact it was difficult at first when I left my old friends. - شعرت بالغربة. ففى الواقع كان الأمر صعبًا فى البداية عندما تركت أصدقائى القدامى.

V Writing

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

Use short and clear sentences in text messages.

استخدم جمل قصيرة وواضحة فى الرسائل النصية.

Stop here!

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الانشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

«Lives around the world»

1. There are five people in my family. ١. يوجد خمسة أشخاص فى عائلتى.
2. I don't live in the city, but I live in a village with my parents. ٢. لا أعيش فى المدينة، ولكن أعيش فى قرية مع والدى.
3. My family doesn't have water in the house. ٣. لا تمتلك عائلتى ماء فى المنزل.
4. I have breakfast with my family. ٤. أتناول وجبة الفطار مع عائلتى.
5. I help my mother make dinner. ٥. أساعد والدتى فى إعداد وجبة العشاء.

Quick Look

Skills

نمى مهاراتك بشكل مستمر

أثناء العام الدراسى

كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية

«أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق»

General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : I moved to a new house, Tamer.

Tamer : A new house! (1) ....

Ali : It's in Alexandria by the sea.

Tamer : Fantastic! (2) ....

Ali : I moved there a month ago.

Tamer : (3) ....

Ali : Yes, it's a large house with a garden full of flowers.

Tamer : Do you like flowers ?

Ali : (4) .... My favourite hobby is planting flowers. And you ?

Tamer : (5) ....

Ali : Where do you practise football ?

Tamer : (6) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like your dress. It's ....
   a. ugly b. bad c. terrible d. attractive
2. Our English teacher is a/an .... person. He helps us a lot.
   a. unkind b. kind c. evil d. bad
3. The opposite of "beautiful" is ....
   a. funny b. happy c. busy d. ugly
4. .... give us milk and meat.
   a. Lions b. Giraffes c. Chickens d. Goats
5. This week we are going on a .... in Al Azhar Park.
   a. picnic b. flight c. voyage d. journey
6. My friend, Sameh had a lot of .... in the mountains.
   a. interviews b. adventures c. meetings d. matches

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 76 & 77

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
armchair (n)	كرسى بمسند	lamp (n)	مصباح (لمبة)
basin (n)	حوض	mirror (n)	مرآة
carpet (n)	سجادة	wardrobe (n)	دولاب ملابس
curtains (n)	ستائر	bookshelf (n)	رف للكتب
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	cushions (n)	وسائد / مخدات

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
bedroom (n)	حجرة النوم	drawers (n)	أدراج
belong (ed) (v)	يخص - ينتمى	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
description (n)	وصف	bathroom (n)	حمام
match (ed) (v)	يتوافق / ينسجم مع / يلائم	wash (ed) (v)	يغسل
light (n)	ضوء	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
floor (n)	الأرضية / طابق	dress (n)	فستان
cupboard (n)	دولاب	window (n)	شباك

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
nature reserves (n)	محميات طبيعية	flat (n)	شقة
downstairs (adv)	الطابق السفلى	Cambridge	مدينة كامبريدج (انجلترا)
shopping (n)	تسوق	Oxford	مدينة أوكسفورد (انجلترا)
information (n)	معلومات	grey (adj)	رمادى اللون
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	reply (ied) (v) , (n)	يرد - رد
penfriend (n)	صديق مراسلة	Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا
practise (d) (v)	يمارس / يتدرب	socks (n)	جوارب (شراب)
nationality (n)	جنسية	idea (n)	فكرة
language (n)	لغة	dishes (n)	أطباق
email (ed) (v) , (n)	رسالة بريد الكترونى - يرسل رسالة بريد الكترونى	thank (ed) (v)	يشكر

Remember تذكر

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
see	يرى	saw	seen
write	يكتب	wrote	written
put	يضع	put	put
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
open	يفتح	close	يغلق
nearby	قريب / مجاور	far from	بعيد عن
downstairs	الطابق السفلى	upstairs	الطابق العلوى
start	يبدأ	finish	ينتهى

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

lamp	something that gives light	مصباح (لمبة)
basin	• you can wash your face in this • a bowl for washing usually with taps in a bathroom, bedroom, etc.	حوض
curtains	they are next to your windows and you close them at night	ستائر
wardrobe	• It is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes	دولاب ملابس
chest of drawers	• It has drawers where you can put your clothes • a piece of furniture with drawers (boxes with handles on them) to put things in	خزانة ذات ادراج
mirror	a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you	مرآة
carpets	these are on the floor	سجاد
armchair	a large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on	كرسي بمسند

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

1



Boy : My room is small, but it's really attractive(1). I have a lamp(2) on a bookshelf(3) next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe(4) with a mirror(5) on the front, and my desk is under the window.

Check Vocabulary

(1) جذاب | (2) لمبة/ اباجورة | (3) رف الكتب | (4) دولاب ملابس | (5) مرآة

Do you like my curtains[6]? The colour matches[7] the carpet[8]. The best thing about my room is the sofa[9]. I can sit there and read or watch videos[10] on my computer.

2

Girl : My bed is under the window[11]. There are cushions[12] on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of[13] the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair[14]. I keep[15] some clothes in the chest of drawers[16]. Our bathroom[17] is downstairs[18], but I have a basin[19] in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



Check Vocabulary

(6) ستائر	(7) يتوافق مع	(8) سجادة	(9) أريكة / كنبة	(10) يشاهد فيديوهات
(11) شباك	(12) وسائد / مخدات	(13) ينظر من	(14) كرسي بمسند	(15) يحفظ
(16) خزانة ذات ادراج	(17) حمام	(18) الدور السفلي	(19) حوض	

Videoscript on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Narrator : This is a chair from Ancient Egypt, and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood [1].

In Ancient Egypt, only the richest [2] people had wooden furniture[3] because it was very expensive[4].

Today, most people have wooden furniture and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خشب	(2) الأغنى	(3) أثاث خشبي	(4) غالي الثمن

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but is covered in[5] gold[6]. Can you see the lions' heads ? It belonged to[7] the pharaoh, Tutankhamun. You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities[8] in Cairo.

We believe[9] that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.

Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone[10]. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games.

The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors[11]. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old it is made from metal[12].

Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home ?

What other furniture do you have at home ?

Check Vocabulary

مغطى بـ (5)	ذهب (6)	ينتمي إلى / يخص (7)	تحف وآثار قديمة (8)	يعتقد (9)	يحجر (10)	مرايا (11)	معدن (12)

• on Lesson 5 WB page 76

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight[1] in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed they have a big wardrobe. My mum puts her dresses[2] in there. There is also an armchair next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes[3] in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!

Check Vocabulary

ضوء الشمس (1)	فساتين (2)	ملابس (3)

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dear Rebecca,



It is very nice to meet you. My name is Judy. I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves[1] nearby[2]. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents[3] live in a flat downstairs[4].

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping[5], then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[6]. I am happy to be able to[7] practise[8] my English!

I hope to hear from you soon,

Judy

Check Vocabulary

(1) محميات طبيعية	(2) قريب / مجاور	(3) أجداد	(4) الطابق السفلي
(5) التسوق	(6) صديق مراسلة	(7) قادر على	(8) يمارس / يتدرب

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

Hi Tamer



Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near El Faiyoum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge, but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English. Please write to me again soon.

Yours,

Oliver

Unit 1

• on Lesson 6 WB page 77



Hi Leila

b [1] Thank you for your email. Here is some information[1] about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden[2]. Does your home have a garden ?

a [2] Without[3] a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live ?

d [3] I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk[4] from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home ?

I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions !

Best wishes

Mariana

Check Vocabulary

(1) معلومات	(2) حديقة خاصة	(3) بدون	(4) تمشية لمسافة قصيرة

• on Lesson 7 SB page 11



Hi Alex !

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sport[1] or play music[2]. I do not watch TV when I get home[3]. I always do my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) يمارس رياضة	(2) يعزف موسيقى	(3) يصل المنزل

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

Hi Dan!



Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I do not have breakfast before school. There is a "breakfast break[4]" after the first lesson[5]. How many lessons does your school have every day ?

Check Vocabulary

(4) راحة لتناول وجبة الأفطار	(5) حصة / درس

on Lesson 7 SB page 11



I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner[1]. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on it. I close[2] them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey[3] armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks[4] and other clothes in it. Finally, there is a big carpet on the floor[5]!

Check Vocabulary

(1) في الركن	(2) يغلق	(3) رمادي اللون	(4) جوارب	(5) الأرضية

الأزهر الشريف

تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في ملحق المعاصر

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

الملاحظات اللغوية

Language Notes

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
wardrobe (n)	دولاب خاص للملابس	– A wardrobe is a cupboard used for storing clothes.
cupboard (n)	دولاب لتخزين الأشياء	– You'll find everything you need for the recipe in the kitchen cupboard.
reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	– El Faiyoum is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby. *(SB page 10)*
reserve (v)	يحجز	– I reserved a train ticket to Alexandria last week.
penfriend (n)	صديق مراسلة	– I want to have a penfriend because I want to practise my English. *(SB page 10)*
pal (n)	صديق مقرب	– Ali and Ahmed will be good pals.
keypal (n)	صديق الإنترنت	– If you are interested in having a keypal, please contact me.

Expressions and Prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

belong to	يخص / ينتمي إلى	– Which bedroom belongs to one of the children ? *(SB page 9)*
sleep with the curtains open	ينام والستائر مفتوحة	– He always sleeps with the curtains of his bedroom open.
thanks for = thank ... for	شكراً على ... ويتبعها (inf. + ing) اسم أو	– Thanks for being my penfriend. *(SB page 11)* – Thanks for your email. *(SB page 11)* – Thank you for sending me your photo.

tell ... about	يخبر (شخص) عن	– **Tell me about** your typical daily routine in Germany. *(SB page 11)*
a breakfast break	فترة استراحة لوجبة الإفطار	– There is **a breakfast break** after the first lesson.
a short walk from ...	تمشية قصيرة من ...	– The school is **a short walk from** my house. *(WB page 77)*
get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه	– Every day, I get up early, get dressed and have breakfast with my family.
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	– When does the bus **arrive at** the museum ? *(WB page 78)*
arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير) مدينة أو دولة ... إلخ	– He **arrived in** France on a business trip.
hear from	يسمع من	– I hope to **hear from** you soon. *(SB page 10)*

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is a large cupboard in which you put your clothes.
   a. fridge b. wardrobe c. drawer d. chest
2. We use .... to cover the floors.
   a. carpets b. curtains c. drawers d. clothes
3. You can put some of your clothes in this chest of ....
   a. windows b. armchairs c. basins d. drawers
4. We have .... on this window to protect us from harmful rays أشعة ضارة of the sun.
   a. carpets b. curtains c. mats d. bells

... to wash your face in.

5. In the bathroom, we have a ceramic حوض ....
a. basin b. washer c. shower d. mirror

6. A .... is a piece of glass that you can look at and see yourself in.
a. pole b. glass c. cup d. mirror

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

7. WB When they open the curtains, there is always lots of .... in the room.
a. moon b. sunlight c. darkness d. study

8. WB I would love to visit the nature .... near El Fayoum.
a. preserves b. revises c. reserves d. deserves

9. SB In my bedroom, there is a grey .... I sit and read my book there.
a. cupboard b. wardrobe c. armchair d. mirror

10. SB El Fayoum is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves ....
a. nearby b. near c. next d. up

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. The policeman asked me to give a full .... of the thief.
a. description b. revision c. preview d. review

12. What's your .... ? - I'm Egyptian.
a. nationality b. address c. subject d. birthday

13. There is a colourful carpet on the ....
a. flood b. cushions c. hall d. floor

14. We always talk online. He is my ....
a. classmate b. penfriend c. partner d. brother

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. I like to sleep with curtains .... The air is fresh.
a. happy b. closed c. open d. lively

16. There is a breakfast .... after the first lesson. I eat my sandwiches in it.
a. lesson b. break c. class d. play

17. My house is not far from my school. The school is a short .... from my house.
    a. picnic   b. walk   c. talk   d. look
18. I get up early, wash my face and get .... for school.
    a. dressed   b. reserved   c. slept   d. walked

III Speaking Corner

1. Describing your bedroom and furniture :
وصف غرفة النوم والأثاث الخاص بك :

• Can you describe your bedroom ? هل يمكنك أن تصف غرفة النوم الخاصة بك ؟	- Yes, I can. I share a room with my sister. There are two beds. I have a big white wardrobe in the corner. - نعم يمكننى، أنا أشترك فى غرفة مع أختى هناك سريرين كما أننى أمتلك دولاب للملابس ذو لون أبيض فى الركن.

2. Asking and answering questions about penfriends
أسئلة وأجوبة عن أصدقاء المراسلة

1. Do you think it is a good idea to have penfriends ? Why / Why not ? ١. هل تعتقد أنه من الجيد أن يكون لديك أصدقاء مراسلة ؟ لم/لم لا ؟	- Yes, I think it's a good idea to have a penfriend because it is good to practise a new language. - نعم، اعتقد أنه من الجيد أن يكون لدى صديق مراسلة لأنه من الجيد ممارسة لغة جديدة.

2. What can you learn from writing to people from different countries ?
٢. ما الذى يمكنك تعلمه من مراسلة اشخاص من بلاد مختلفة ؟

- I learn about their different habits and traditions.
أتعلم عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم المختلفة.

IV Writing

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

Remember to use capital letters for :
تذكر أن تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة لـ :

1. names of people and places
١. أسماء الأشخاص والأماكن
2. nationalities and languages
٢. الجنسيات واللغات
3. days and months
٣. أيام الأسبوع والشهور

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

«Description of your bedroom»

1. My room is small, but it's really attractive. ١. غرفتى صغيرة، ولكنها فى الحقيقة جميلة.
2. I have a lamp on a bookshelf next to my bed. ٢. لدى مصباح على رف الكتب بجوار سريرى.
3. I have a wardrobe with a mirror on the front. ٣. لدى دولاب ملابس له مرآة فى الأمام.
4. My bed is under the window. ٤. يوجد سريرى تحت النافذة.
5. The colour of my curtains matches the carpets. ٥. لون الستائر يتماشى / يتناسب مع لون السجاد.

Writing Skills



★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

Writing skills فى نهاية كل وحدة التى تمكنك من تكوين وترتيب الجمل ومهارة الكتابة.

اجابة كل الموضوعات الإنشائية.

How to write تمكنك من مهارة الكتابة بطريقة مبتكرة فى نهاية كل وحدة.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. .... is sending an email to Dan.
   a. Sam b. Adel c. Adam d. Ali
2. Sam is from ....
   a. Britain b. Germany c. France d. America
3. Sam doesn't have .... before school.
   a. dinner b. lunch c. break d. breakfast
4. In Sam's school, they have .... lessons every day.
   a. 7 b. 9 c. 8 d. 6

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The curtains .... the painting and the bed. They are the same colour.
   a. deal b. treat c. play d. match
2. My favourite .... are maths and English.
   a. subjects b. sports c. hobbies d. interests
3. WB You can see yourself in the ....
   a. sofa b. bookshelf c. mirror d. carpet
4. Can I .... the door, please ? - There is much noise.
   a. open b. close c. clap d. take
5. This bag is mine. It .... to me.
   a. works b. brings c. treats d. belongs
6. It is a good .... to do some exercises in the morning.
   a. tool b. idea c. equipment d. factory
7. This shop sells good ice cream. My dad always .... me some at the weekend.
   a. brings b. drinks c. eats d. drives
8. There is a lamp .... to the desk.
   a. next b. behind c. back d. front

9. The bed is in front of the wardrobe. This means that the bed is .... the wardrobe.

a. next　　b. opposite　　c. behind　　d. before

10. SB I play computer games .... my brother.

a. at　　b. from　　c. with　　d. to

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The sofa is next <u>up</u> the armchair. (........)
2. SB Thank you to <u>being</u> my penfriend. (........)
3. SB <u>At</u> Saturdays, I usually get up early. (........)
4. There are two beds <u>on</u> the room. (........)

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words :

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tamer to describe your bedroom. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to — فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرا على

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ sofa
- ☐ feed
- ☐ typical
- ☐ village
- ☐ mirror
- ☐ daily routine
- ☐ basin
- ☐ curtains
- ☐ wardrobe
- ☐ chest of drawers
- ☐ cupboard
- ☐ armchair

2 Read and write sentences using the present simple tense and questions with can, have you got & shall.

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع البسيط وتكوين أسئلة باستخدام (can , have you got & shall).

- ☐ I usually get up at seven o'clock.
- ☐ Hamdi doesn't often drink coffee for breakfast.
- ☐ Shall I help you carry the bag ?
- ☐ Can I have a big bowl of fruit salad ?

3 Talk about my daily routines and describe my bedroom and its furniture أتحدث عن الروتين اليومى الخاص بى واصف حجرة نومى والأثاث بها

- ☐ On Saturdays, I never have coffee for breakfast.
- ☐ I often listen to music on my way to school.
- ☐ I share a room with my sister. There are two beds : my bed's under the window.
- ☐ I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight.

لمزيد من التدريبات • جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

REVIEW on unit 1

SB page 11 WB page

1. Vocabulary

daily	يومي	grandparents	أجداد
routine	روتين	adventures	مغامرات
sofa	كنبة	armchair	كرسي بمسند
text	يرسل رسائل نصية على الهاتف المحمول	basin	حوض
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	carpet	سجادة
interview	يحاور / حوار / مقابلة رسمية	curtains	ستائر
attractive	جذاب	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
terrible	مفزع / رهيب	lamp	مصباح
railway line	خط سكك حديدية	mirror	مرآة
prison	سجن	wardrobe	دولاب للملابس
typical	نمطي / نموذجي	bookshelf	رف للكتب
village	قرية	garden	حديقة خاصة

2. Language

1. Adverbs of Frequency :
١. ظروف التكرار

- always دائمًا	- sometimes أحيانًا	- often غالبًا
- never أبدًا	- usually عادة	

- تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما :

ex.: - She always studies hard for her exams.
- He usually plays tennis on Friday.

2. Asking questions using (Have you got, Can & Shall).
٢. توجيه أسئلة باستخدام (Have you got, Can & Shall).

ex.: - Can we sit next to the window ?
- Have you got any fish today ?
- Shall I bring you some water ?

3. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about daily routine

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن الروتين اليومى

Questions ?	Answers ✔
• What time do you get up ?	- I get up at 7:00 a.m.
• How do you go to school ?	- I take the school bus.
• What time does your first lesson start this morning ?	- It starts at 8:00 a.m.
• Do you have a breakfast break ? If yes, when ?	- Yes, I have a breakfast break after the fourth lesson.
• Do you usually text your friends before you sleep ?	- Yes, I do.

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات / رسائل بريد الكترونى هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model email

"Your daily routine"

From : mariam@gmail.com
To : dina@gmail.com
Subject : Daily routine

Hi Dina,

My daily routine is the same every school day! I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Soha. Sometimes we listen to music on our way to school. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and text my friends. Then I go to bed! Sometimes I prefer playing chess with my father. My sister prefers playing video games.

Yours,
Mariam

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A paragraph / An email on

➲ Your daily routine / Your bedroom / Your new house / What you and your family do on holidays

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- Do you have a daily routine ?
- When do you start your day ?
- What do you do at the end of the day ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- get up	- make dinner
- have lunch	- do sports
- music	- text friends
- sofa	- do homework

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I get up at	- I always help ....
- I have (breakfast / lunch)	- I play ....
- I listen to	- I text my friends at ....

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

"Your daily routine"

....

....

....

....

....

Daily routine and a description of your home project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن الروتين اليومى ووصف منزلك



Objectives الأهداف

1. To find out the daily routine of a person in a different country.
أن تكتشف الروتين اليومى لشخص ما فى بلد مختلف.
2. To find out what time students come home from school in a country you choose.
أن تكتشف متى يعود الطلاب للمنزل من المدرسة فى دولة تختارها.
3. To describe your bedroom.
أن تصف حجرة نومك.

Get started استعد

1. Is your daily routine the same as the person you choose ?
هل روتينك اليومى مثل الروتين اليومى للشخص الذى تختاره ؟
2. When do students get up in the country you choose ?
متى يستيقظ الطلاب فى الدولة التى تختارها ؟
3. Mention the furniture in your bedroom.
اذكر الأثاث الموجود فى حجرة نومك.

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on a description of your bedroom.
اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن وصف لحجرة نومك.

OR Write a short paragraph on the daily routine. Support your paragraph using pictures.
أو اكتب فقرة قصيرة عن الروتين اليومى. ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg
* The internet
* Student's books

- بنك المعرفة المصرى
- الانترنت
- الكتب المدرسية

Test yourself unit 1

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى محتواك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة الصوت المسموع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Shahana is from ....
   a. China b. Egypt c. India d. Pakistan
2. Shahana shares a room with her ....
   a. mother b. sister c. grandmother d. cousin
3. Shahana lives in a/an ....
   a. village b. city c. country d. island
4. Shahana's family get up ....
   a. late b. early c. in the afternoon d. in the evening

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : Hi ! Ashraf. Where do you live ?
Ashraf : Hi ! Ayman. (1) ....
Ayman : A village ! (2) .... ?
Ashraf : In Kalyoubia Governorate.
Ayman : Is it quiet there ?
Ashraf : (3) .... There is no noise.
Ayman : (4) .... ?
Ashraf : With my family.
Ayman : (5) .... ?
Ashraf : I have two brothers and a sister.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Haytham and this is my house. My house is quite big. It has got two floors - a ground floor and a first floor. **It** has also got an attic and a basement بدروم.

On the ground floor there is a hall, a kitchen, a living room, a big dining room and a toilet.

H.W

On the first floor there are three bedrooms, one bathroom and a big corridor. My bedroom is between my parents' bedroom and the bathroom. My sister's bedroom is in front of mine.

I love my bedroom, but I also like the attic. In the attic, I keep some of my books and my old toys. I like to spend my time there because it is **large** and there is a big sofa there where I sometimes take a nap.

In the basement, we keep the washing machine, the drying machine and old things. At the back of the house, there is also the garage, where my parents park the family car, and a lovely garden, with many green spaces, flowers, two swings and a swimming pool. I love my house so much! It's very comfortable.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for this passage ?

....

2. Why do you think Haytham likes the attic ?

....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "***large***" is "..................." .
   a. wide b. long c. small d. sad
5. The toilet is in the ....
   a. hall b. ground floor c. first floor d. basement
6. There are two .... in the garden.
   a. slides b. bathrooms c. swings d. pools

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't have coffee before breakfast. "Before" is the opposite of ....
   a. back b. after c. next d. last
2. I .... the bus to school every day.
   a. take b. have c. feed d. share
3. My friend is sending me a .... message on my phone.
   a. research b. text c. picnic d. street

H.W

4. Criminals المجرمون must be sent to ....
a. university b. hospital c. prison d. school

5. The word "attractive" means ....
a. ugly b. beautiful c. dirty d. terrible

6. Every bathroom should have a .... to wash in it.
a. basin b. basket c. pencil d. rubber

7. WB You can see yourself in the ....
a. wardrobe b. lamp c. mirror d. cupboard

8. Children always .... a lot of water.
a. drink b. drinks c. drinking d. are drinking

9. SB Where does Shahana .... ?
a. lives b. living c. to live d. live

10. WB A : .... your father got a computer ? B : Yes, he has.
a. Have b. Has c. Does d. Do

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. Do you .... (likes) football ?
2. My mum .... (get) water from the tap every morning.
3. Shahana .... (not live) in the city.
4. .... (Do) you got that game, Ali ?

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB She gets up early and have breakfast. (............)
2. WB We have get fish or chicken with rice. (............)
3. SB Alex walk to school with his brother every day. (............)
4. Jim works usually on Saturdays. (............)

E. Writing

7 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The home you want to live in"

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 How are you feeling ?



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
- **Writing :**
  An email to a friend
- **Listening :**
  People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
- **Speaking :**
  Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news
- **Language :**
  Adverbs of manner
- **Life Skills :**
  Empathy
- **Values :**
  Patience

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة **المعاصر** للمتابعة
• ملحق المهارات.

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 : 15 WB pages 79 & 80

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ward (n)	جناح / عنبر (فى مستشفى)	calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
food stall (n)	كشك لبيع الطعام (مكان لبيع الطعام فى الهواء الطلق)	sewing (n)	الخياطة / الحياكة
		sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
park (ed) (v) , (n)	يركن (سيارة) - حديقة عامة	deaf (adj)	أصم (لا يسمع)
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل / يتصل	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح

Jobs وظائف

call-centre worker (n)	موظف مركز اتصالات	shop worker (n)	عامل / بائع فى محل
computer engineer (n)	مهندس كمبيوتر (حاسبات)	street-food seller (n)	بائع طعام متجول (فى الشارع)
nurse (n)	ممرضة	cook (n)	طباخ
police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة	artist (n)	فنان / رسام

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 &13 WB page 79

school trip (n)	رحلة مدرسية	tired (adj)	متعب
patients (n)	المرضى	moment (n)	لحظة
rest (n)	راحة	shop (ped) (v) , (n)	يتسوق / محل
tourists (n)	سائحون	wave (d) (v)	يلوح (بيده)
shelf (n)	رف	fountain (n)	نافورة
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	problem (n)	مشكلة
tonight (adv)	الليلة	keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح
street (n)	شارع	way (n)	طريق
tins of beans (n)	علب الفول	climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

skill (n)	مهارة	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما	boat (n)	قارب / مركب
flat (n)	شقة	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر (بالقارب)
surprise (n)	مفاجأة	paint (ed) (v)	يلون / يدهن
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	painting (n)	دهان / تلوين - لوحة فنية
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	art club (n)	نادى الفنون
present (n)	هدية	lovely (adj)	جميل
neighbour (n)	جار	dance (d) (v)	يرقص
kitchen (n)	مطبخ	habit (n)	عادة
falafel (n)	فلافل (طعمية)	repeated (adj)	متكرر
cheese sandwiches (n)	سندويتشات جبنة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn
teach	يُعلم / يُدرس	taught	taught
hurt	يؤذى / يضر	hurt	hurt
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
stand	يقف	stood	stood
catch	يلحق بـ / يصطاد	caught	caught

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
busy	مشغول / مزدحم	free	غير مشغول / فاضى
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
bored	شاعر بالملل	excited	منفعل / متحمس

best	أفضل	worst	أسوأ
lazy	كسول	active	نشيط
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب
finished	منتهى	unfinished	غير منتهى
temporary	مؤقت	permanent	دائم

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

park	put a car, lorry, van, etc. in a place where it can stay for a period of time يركن (سيارة)
sign language	a way of talking to people who cannot hear, using hands instead of words لغة الإشارة
ward	a large room in a hospital for people who need to stay in the hospital for one night or more عنبر فى مستشفى
street-food seller	a person who prepares or sells food in the street sometimes from a van or stall بائع طعام متجول (فى الشارع)
police officer	• this person helps to keep people safe in the streets • a male or female member of the police ضابط شرطة
call-centre worker	this person speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems موظف فى مركز اتصالات
shop worker	this person helps in a place which sells things عامل فى محل
computer engineer	• you call this person if there is problem with your computer system • a person who mends or works with computers مهندس كمبيوتر (حاسبات)
calligraphy	beautiful writing using special pens or brushes فن الخط
communicate	share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways يتواصل / يتصل
deaf	not able to hear anything or not able to hear well أصم (لا يسمع)

food stall	a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food كشك طعام (في الشارع)
look forward to	feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen يتطلع إلى / يتمنى
make sure	take special care and attention to do something يتأكد من

11 Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

3 am in Cairo



A: I'm looking after[1] patients[2] at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward[3]. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward[4] to going home and having a rest[5].

Amal



B: We're driving around the city and making sure[6] that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit bored[7] and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to having breakfast!

Emad and Adel

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعتني بـ	(2) المرضى	(3) جناح / عنبر (في مستشفى)	(4) يتطلع إلى
(5) يستريح	(6) يتأكد من	(7) يشعر بالملل قليلاً	

C : I'm parking[8] my food stall[9] here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists[10] come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

Kamal

Check Vocabulary

يركن (8) | كشك لبيع الطعام في الشارع (9) | سائحين (10)

Listening

- on Lesson 1 WB page 79



Man 1 : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.



Woman 1 : There seems to be a problem[1] with the keyboard[2], but it won't take me long.



Woman 2 : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you ?



Man 2 : Are you looking for tins of beans[3] ? You can find them on the top shelf[4], over there.

Check Vocabulary

مشكلة (1) | لوحة مفاتيح (2) | علب فول (3) | الرف الأعلى (4)

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14



Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy[1]. On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat. On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed[2] and then I have a late breakfast with my grandmother-she's a fantastic cook[3]! In the afternoon, I do my homework.



Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea.

My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing[4]. I am learning to sail[5] but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with[6] our father and uncle on their boat.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كسول إلى حد ما | (2) يبقى في الفراش | (3) طباخ | (4) يصلح | (5) يبحر | (6) يقضي وقتاً مع

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 15

Tamer : I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin Sami. Sami is deaf[4] - he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!





Check Vocabulary

(1) مهارة | (2) لغة الإشارة | (3) يتواصل | (4) أصم (لا يسمع) | (5) مفاجأة



Eman : I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour(6), Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building(7), we're repairing(8) his flat(9). My sisters and I are painting(10) the kitchen and I am also sewing(11) some new curtains.



Manal : I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy(12) and art club(13) at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist(14) and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional(15) Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present(16).

Check Vocabulary

(6) جار	(7) مبنى	(8) يصلح	(9) شقة	(10) يدهن	(11) يخيط / يحيك
(12) فن الخط	(13) نادى الفنون	(14) فنان / رسام	(15) تقليدى	(16) هدية	

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
look through	يتصفح - يلقى نظرة سريعة	- Look through the unit to find more vocabulary.
look after	يعتنى بـ	- I'm looking after patients at a hospital. (SB page 1?)
look forward to	تستخدم بمعنى يتطلع إلى ويتبعها اسم أو (inf. + ing)	- I'm looking forward to the summer vacation. - I'm looking forward to having breakfast. (SB page 13)

feel + adj. صفة	ill يشعر بالمرض tired يشعر بالتعب bored يشعر بالملل hungry يشعر بالجوع cold يشعر بالبرد	– I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. *(SB page 13)* – Adel's feeling a bit bored and I'm feeling hungry. *(SB page 13)* – I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee. *(SB page 13)*
prefer	بمعنى يفضل وعندما يكون مسبوقًا بـ would يتبعه (to + inf.)	**A :** Whose weekend activities would you prefer to do, Ziad's or Injy's ? *(SB page 14)* **B :** Ziad's activities.
Expressions and Prepositions		**التعبيرات وحروف الجر**
go on a school trip	يذهب فى رحلة مدرسية	– Where is Injy going on a school trip ? *(SB page 12)*
have a rest have an old boat	يأخذ قسطا من الراحة لديه قارب قديم	– I would like to have a rest after work. – My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. *(SB page 14)*
have a big dinner	يتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة	– I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents. *(SB page 14)*
make sure make for make falafel	يتأكد من يصنع من أجل ... يعد (الطعمية)	– The police officer makes sure that people are safe in the streets. *(SB page 13)* – What is Manal making for her uncle ? *(SB page 15)*
drive around the city	يتجول حول المدينة (بالسيارة)	– We're driving around the city. *(SB page 13)*
get everything ready	يجهز كل شىء	– People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. *(SB page 13)*
learn to + inf.	يتعلم أن	– I am learning to sail. *(SB page 14)*

quite + adj. صفة	إلى حد ما وتتبعها صفة	– I'm usually quite lazy. (SB page ...)
sit by the fountain	يجلس بجانب النافورة	– They are sitting by the fountain. (WB page ...)
think of	يفكر في	– What do you think of your new school ?
find easy / difficult	يجد من السهل / من الصعب أن ...	– Which subjects are you finding easy or difficult at school at the moment ? (SB page ...)
look very nice	يبدو لطيفا جدا	– The pizza looks very nice.
communicate with	يتواصل مع (شخص)	– He can't communicate with you because he is deaf.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's a "No parking" place, so you can't .... your car here.
   a. bark b. park c. dive d. send
2. Hala is a doctor in a/an .... for children at hospital.
   a. word b. ward c. award d. wardrobe
3. If there is a problem with my computer system, I call a ....
   a. nurse b. shop worker c. computer engineer d. police officer
4. A/An .... usually drives around the city to keep people safe in the streets.
   a. police officer b. shop worker c. teacher d. engineer
5. .... language is very important for the deaf people.
   a. Sign b. Signal c. Waving d. Traffic
6. .... means beautiful handwriting that you do with a special pen or a brush.
   a. Painting b. Sewing c. Calligraphy d. Calling
7. The street-food seller sells his food in the street in a food ....
   a. stool b. stall c. stick d. stock

8. A .... works in an office where there are a lot of telephones, takes people's orders and answers questions.
   a. police officer   b. street-food seller
   c. computer engineer   d. call-centre worker

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

9. WB Shady is ...., but he understands us because we use sign language.
   a. deaf   b. mute   c. blind   d. disabled
10. WB It is usually easy to .... with people in other countries if you can speak English.
   a. connect   b. communicate   c. stay   d. clean
11. SB My grandmother is a fantastic .... Her food is delicious.
   a. teacher   b. doctor   c. cook   d. nurse

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

12. You can learn calligraphy at the .... club.
   a. art   b. tools   c. sports   d. circus
13. There's a big .... full of water in the main street.
   a. mountain   b. park   c. fountain   d. shop
14. There are four .... in English language : reading, writing, speaking and listening.
   a. skills   b. presents   c. clubs   d. awards
15. She's a/an .... Her painting is very lovely.
   a. cook   b. singer   c. engineer   d. artist

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. I prefer going .... a school trip around the Pyramids.
   a. to   b. on   c. of   d. in
17. The food in this restaurant is usually .... good.
   a. quiet   b. quite   c. quit   d. quickly
18. I usually .... a rest when I feel tired.
   a. do   b. have   c. make   d. wave
19. Before you go on holiday, you should .... sure that the doors are locked.
   a. do   b. make   c. get   d. hear

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. The Present Continuous Tense : : زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة →

I He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب We / You / They / فاعل جمع	+	am is are	+	inf. المصدر + ing

ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy.
- Sami is learning sign language at school.
- I'm sitting in my English class now.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب We / You / They فاعل جمع	+	am is are	+	not + (inf. المصدر + ing)

ex. - She is not teaching at the moment.
- They are not studying now.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am Is Are	+	I he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب we / you / they فاعل جمع	+	(inf. المصدر + ing)

ex. **Is she helping** sick people at present ?
- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

Are they growing potatoes now ?
- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

(b) Wh-questions : **(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :**

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + **am / is / are** + **subject** (الفاعل) + **(inf.** المصدر **+ ing)** **?**

ex. Where **are** you **working** now ?
- I'm working in Cairo.

What **is** she **studying** at the moment ?
- She is studying maths.

Usage الاستخدام

- يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex.: - They **are designing** a new library now.
- He **is reading** a book at present.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها فى المستقبل.

ex.: - We **are going** to Aswan tomorrow.
- They **are having** a party tonight.

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

- عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

write → **writing**

practise → **practising**

see → **seeing**

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

swim → **swimming** **sit** → **sitting**

- لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed → **feeding** **wait** → **waiting**

... ينتهي الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

lie → lying   die → dying

... كلمات دالة: غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن

(Key words)

now الآن	Take care! احذر!	at the moment	في تلك اللحظة
Look! انظر!	still مازال	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Listen! انصت!	tonight في هذه الليلة	Look out! / Watch out!	احترس!

ex. - Listen! She's singing.
- He is working now.

2. The present simple tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :

تم شرحه في الوحدة الأولى

ex. - We usually stay at home when it's cold.
- She sometimes listens to the radio.
- Do you like milk ? - No, I don't.
- Does she go to school early ? - Yes, she does.

3. The difference between the present continuous and the present simple : الاختلاف بين زمن المضارع المستمر وزمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple for : نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في :	We use the present continuous for : نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر في :
· habits العادات I always drink milk for breakfast. **· routines and repeated actions** الروتين اليومى والأحداث المتكررة We go to school every day. **· things that are always true.** الأشياء التى دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة (معلومة صحيحة) My aunt lives in Cairo. **· facts** الحقائق خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة The sun rises in the east.	**· things happening now** الأشياء التى تحدث الآن I am sitting in my English class. **· unfinished actions in progress around now.** أحداث غير منتهية ومستمرة حتى الآن My sister is learning to swim. **· temporary situations or actions.** أحداث أو مواقف مؤقتة They are painting the school this week.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB My mother .... at the moment.
   a. shop b. shops c. shopping d. is shopping
2. SB Why .... Amal feeling tired ?
   a. am b. are c. were d. is
3. WB What .... you think they are doing at the moment ?
   a. were b. are c. do d. did
4. WB Fady .... wearing a jacket today because it is very hot.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. aren't d. don't
5. WB How often do you .... dinner ?
   a. makes b. make c. making d. made

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. I always go to school on foot, but today I .... the bus.
   a. takes b. take c. taking d. am taking
7. What game .... now ?
   a. did you play b. are you playing
   c. are playing d. do you play
8. We usually .... up early every day.
   a. get b. getting c. gets d. are getting
9. Look ! They .... fast.
   a. run b. running c. are running d. runs
10. Listen ! Sama .... the piano.
    a. is playing b. played c. plays d. play

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Who are <u>drive</u> around the city ? (..............................)
2. WB The police officer <u>visit</u> a school today. (..............................)

3. WB On Saturday, I usually spending time with my cousins. (..................)
4. WB I can't come to the park because I'm cleaning yesterday. (..................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Rana and Mona watching TV now. (..................)
6. She never go to school on Fridays. (..................)
7. Yasser doesn't studying now. (..................)
8. She isn't feel well. (..................)

3. Read and complete with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Look ! The birds .... (sing) in trees.
2. Dalia .... (not study) on Fridays.
3. The farmers .... (grow) plants now.
4. I can't help you now. I'm .... (do) my work.
5. What .... (you do) now ?

IV Speaking Corner

Asking and answering questions about the weekend

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Questions ?	Answers ✔
• What do you usually do at the weekend ? ماذا تفعل عادة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- At the weekend, I usually get up early. فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع عادة ما أستيقظ مبكرًا.
• How do you feel at the weekend ? كيف يكون شعورك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I feel excited and active. أشعر بالحماس والنشاط.
• Whose weekend activities would you prefer to do, Ziad's or Injy's ? Why ? أى من أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع تفضلها. أنشطة زياد أم أنشطة إنجى ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I'd prefer to do Injy's activities because I don't like to be lazy. أفضل أن أقوم بأنشطة إنجى لأننى لا أحب أن أكون كسولًا.

General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. The nurse is working in children's ....
   a. award b. word c. ward d. wardrobe
2. The street-food seller is selling .... food.
   a. dirty b. delicious c. terrible d. bad
3. The .... makes sure that people are safe in the streets.
   a. doctor b. police officer c. call-centre worker d. nurse
4. The street-food seller is selling food in his ....
   a. café b. restaurant c. canteen d. food stall

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami : What's your job ?
Tarek : (1) ....
Sami : A street-food seller ! (2) .... ?
Tarek : I'm parking my food stall here.
Sami : (3) .... ?
Tarek : Because it's the best place in the city.
Sami : (4) .... ?
Tarek : I prepare sandwiches for people.
Sami : When do people start buying their breakfast ?
Tarek : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a beautiful .... in my uncle's garden.
   a. fountain b. temple c. museum d. calligraphy
2. My sister is clever at .... clothes.
   a. doing b. working c. sewing d. seeing
3. He is .... , so he can't hear you.
   a. blind b. deaf c. tired d. lazy

4. Mum is a fantastic .... ! She prepares delicious food for us to eat every day.
a. doctor b. nurse c. cook d. seller

5. She often .... time with her uncle and father on their boat.
a. makes b. has c. spends d. does

6. Which .... would you like to do in the future ?
a. diary b. notebook c. job d. place

7. The deaf people can .... by using sign language.
a. communicate b. work c. give d. take

8. WB The police officer .... a school today, but he usually drives around the street.
a. visits b. is visiting c. visited d. visit

9. WB Nabila feels ill, so she .... in bed this morning.
a. stay b. stays c. is staying d. to stay

10. At the moment, he .... cheese sandwiches.
a. sold b. sells c. is selling d. sell

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Sally writes an email now. (........)
2. WB What is Emad eat ? (........)
3. She usually make the bed. (........)
4. What do you doing at the weekend ? (........)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. What .... (you do) every day ?
2. .... (you watch) TV now ?
3. .... (you watch) TV every evening ?
4. She .... (not speak) French.
5. She .... (not wash up) now.

6 Write an email of NINETY(90) words :

الإجابة عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Ahmed to tell him about night workers. Your name is Hady and your email address is hady@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18 WB pages 81 & 82



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

guest (n)	ضيف / نزيل	alone (adv)	بمفرده
port (n)	ميناء	striped (adj)	مُخطط / مُقلم
airport (n)	مطار	pattern (n)	نموذج / شكل مرسوم
suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر	hanging (adj)	معلق
wedding (n)	حفل زفاف	desert (n)	صحراء
suit (n)	بدلة	teenager (n)	مراهق
weeding (n)	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة (من الأرض الزراعية)	grateful (adj)	ممتن / شاكر
		skin (n)	جلد (بشرى أو حيوانى)
Adverbs ظروف			
excitedly	بحماس / بانفعال	quietly	بهدوء
happily	بسعادة	quickly	بسرعة
hungrily	بشراهة	lazily	بكسل
loudly	بصوت عالٍ	easily	بسهولة
slowly	ببطء	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
Famous places أماكن مشهورة			
Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر	Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque (n)	مسجد أم سلطان شعبان

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 &17 WB page 81

description (n)	وصف	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
smile (d) (v)	يبتسم	lines (n)	خطوط
rocks (n)	صخور	playground (n)	ملعب / فناء
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر (السماء) - مطر
treat (ed) (v)	يعامل - يعالج	football team (n)	فريق كرة القدم

guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر
hill (n)	تل	crowds (n)	زحام من الناس - حشد
husband (n)	زوج	shopping bags (n)	أكياس التسوق
hours (n)	ساعات	sweet (adj)	لطيف / جميل
selfie (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون المحمول	foreground (n)	مقدمة
		background (n)	خلفية

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

happiness (n)	سعادة	friendly (adj)	ودود
worried (adj)	قلق	area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
rest (ed) (v), (n)	يستريح / راحة	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
nature (n)	الطبيعة	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي / يستريح
pleased (adj)	مسرور	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
river (n)	نهر	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
magazine (n)	مجلة	reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
speak	يتحدث / يتكلم	spoke	spoken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
sing	يغني	sang	sung
win	يفوز	won	won

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
sharp	حاد	blunt	غير حاد
fast	سريع	slow	بطئ
dark	غامق (اللون)	light	فاتح (اللون)

get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	get off	ينزل من (وسيلة مواصلات)
wrong	مخطىء	right	صحيح / على حق
continue	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
exciting	رائع / مثير	boring	ممل
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
dry	جاف	wet	مبتل / رطب
normal	طبيعى	abnormal	غير طبيعى

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

desert	an area of very dry land	صحراء
teenager	a boy or girl aged 13 – 19	مراهق
normal	usual, not different	طبيعى
alone	not with other people	بمفرده
grateful	• feeling and showing that you want to thank someone because of what they have done or given you • feeling happy about the good things in your life	ممتن / شاكر
(in the) background	the part that seems furthest to you in a picture or photograph	فى الخلفية
(in the) foreground	the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph	فى المقدمة
sharp	having a thin edge or point that can cut something or make a hole in something	حاد
striped	with long narrow lines of colour that are a different colour from the areas next to them	مخطط / مقلم
towards	in the direction of, or closer to somebody / something	تجاه
wedding	a ceremony in which people get married	حفل زفاف
careless	not paying enough attention to what you are doing	مهمل

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 16



Girl 1 : This is a photo of my sister's wedding[1]. It's at the end of the day and the guests[2] are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though[3], and still enjoying the party[4]. That's my sister smiling[5] happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her new husband[6].



Boy 1 : That's my class on our school trip[7] to the mountains[8]. We're sitting carefully on the rocks[9] because they are very sharp[10]! We got up at 5 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours[11] and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily[12] eating my lunch.



Boy 2 : This is me at the airport[13]. I'm waiting excitedly[14] to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



Girl 2 : This is my aunt's new baby[15]. Isn't she sweet[16] ? She is laughing loudly[17] in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat-she thinks it's very funny.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حفل زفاف	(2) ضيوف	(3) على الرغم من	(4) حفل	(5) يبتسم	(6) زوج
(7) رحلة مدرسية	(8) جبال	(9) صخور	(10) حاد	(11) ساعات	(12) بشراهة
(13) مطار	(14) بحماس	(15) طفل رضيع	(16) لطيف / جميل	(17) يضحك بصوت عالٍ	

• on Lesson 3 SB page 17



Girl : This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park[1] in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground[2] of the photo. In the background[3], you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is towards the right[4] of the photo and my eldest[5] sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is in the middle of the picture. She's taking a selfie[6] - as usual! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill[7] and on the left[8]. I think she is getting ready[9] to take a photo, too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حديقة الأزهر	(2) فى مقدمة الصورة / الأمام	(3) فى الخلفية	(4) تجاه اليمين	(5) الأكبر سنًا
(6) يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية	(7) تل	(8) على اليسار	(9) يستعد / يجهز	

Reading

• on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Happiness for teenagers



It's normal[1] to get worried[2] or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers[3] to feel happy ? We found five things that can help.

1. Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier !

2. Be friendly

It's good to be alone[4] sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends[5] because this makes teenagers happy.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عادى / طبيعى	(2) يقلق	(3) مراهقين	(4) بمفرده	(5) يكون صداقات جديدة

3. Go outside

People need nature(6) to be happy. Go to the desert(7) or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. Help someone

When you do something kind(8) for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it ! You feel really good.

5. Be grateful

One of the best ways(9) to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased(10) about them.

Check Vocabulary

(6) الطبيعة	(7) صحراء	(8) طيب / عطوف	(9) أفضل الطرق	(10) مسرور

Videoscript on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic(1) and noise(2). This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience(3) nature(4).

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains(5), palm trees(6), plants and flowers. This makes them calm(7) in the middle of a very big city. These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm El-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide(8) and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone.

Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed nature reserve(9). This is a national park(10) in the Sinai peninsula(11).

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed(12) when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral. When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المرور	(2) الضوضاء	(3) يجرب	(4) الطبيعة	(5) نافورات	(6) نخيل
(7) هادىء	(8) مرشد سياحى	(9) محمية رأس محمد الطبيعية	(10) حديقة قومية	(11) شبه جزيرة سيناء	(12) يشعر بالاسترخاء

This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca[13]. She likes doing this because .. she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons[14], geese[15] and vultures[16].
Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside.

People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes because it is very quiet.

And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon.

We all feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go ?

Check Vocabulary

(13) فلوكة	(14) طيور البلشون	(15) أوز	(16) نسور

Reading

- on Lesson 4 WB page 82

Dear Help! Magazine

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I get texts[1] from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things[2]! What am I doing wrong[3] ?
I do well[4] at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please, can you help me ?

Yours, Osama

Dear Osama



Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember : you are wrong[5]! Your friends probably[6] feel worried, just like you. When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that[7] we all work and relax at different times. Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue[8] to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine

Check Vocabulary

(1) رسائل نصية	(2) أشياء رائعة	(3) يخطئ	(4) يؤدي جيدًا	(5) مخطئ	(6) من المحتمل	(7) تذكر أن	(8) يستمر

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

الملاحظات اللغوية

Language Notes

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
It is important to / not to + inf.	من المهم أن / ألا .	– It is important not to drive carelessly when it is raining. (WB page …)
(be) aged	ذو عمر / سن	– A teenager is a boy or girl aged (13 – 19). (WB page …)
age	عمر / سن	= A teenager is a boy or girl / whose age is (13 – 19).

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف الجر

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples
get married	يتزوج	– When two people get married, they have a wedding. (WB page …)
get texts from	يتسلم رسائل نصية من	– I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things. (WB page …)
do exciting things	يقوم بأشياء رائعة	
do well	ينجز / يؤدى أداء جيد	– I do well at school and enjoy my weekends with my family. (WB page …)
down the hill	أسفل التل	– The man came down the hill with his sons.
be grateful for	يكون شاكر أو ممتن لـ …	– Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue to work hard. (WB page …)
try to + inf.	يحاول أن يفعل	– We will try to help you.
stop + (inf. + ing)	يتوقف عن / يمتنع عن	– We will show you how to stop feeling sad. (WB page …)

smile at	يبتسم لـ	– She is smiling happily at the camera. *(SB page 16)*
get on a plane for the first time	يركب الطائرة للمرة الأولى	– I'm waiting excitedly to get on a plane for the first time. *(SB page 16)*
in the background	فى الخلفية / المؤخرة	– There is a photo with trees in the background.
in the foreground	فى المقدمة	– The person in the foreground of the photo is Ali's father.
in the middle of	فى وسط	– Talia is in the middle of the picture. *(SB page 17)*
towards the right	تجاه اليمين	– The bus is going towards the right.
on the left	على جهة اليسار	– There is a big house on the left of the park.
take a selfie as usual	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية كالمعتاد	– She is taking a selfie as usual. *(SB page 17)*
get ready	يستعد / يجهز	– You should get ready for the exam.
get worried	يقلق	– I got worried yesterday because I had an interview.
go outside	يخرج	– Last week, we went outside in the open air.
It's normal to ...	من الطبيعى أن ...	– It's normal to feel sad sometimes. *(SB page 18)*
feel pleased	يشعر بالسرور	– When you remember the good things in your life, you feel pleased.
do something kind	يفعل شيئًا جيدًا / طيبًا	– When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy. *(SB page 18)*
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	– You can catch a plane from an airport. *(WB page 81)*

Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. He invited over 100 .... for the wedding party.
   a. descriptions b. suitcases c. guests d. hills
2. This is a photo of my parents' .... They are very happy.
   a. weeding b. wedding c. married d. crowds
3. The damaged ship reached the .... safely.
   a. airport b. ground c. port d. playground
4. Please, make sure that you send your emails ....
   a. loudly b. carefully c. slowly d. hungrily
5. That's my sister. She is smiling .... at the camera.
   a. happily b. carefully c. loudly d. hungrily
6. I'm waiting .... to get on a plane for the first time. It's an exciting adventure.
   a. happily b. loudly c. excitedly d. carefully
7. I'm sitting under a tree and .... eating my lunch.
   a. loudly b. hungrily c. carefully d. slowly

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. WB The skin of a zebra is ....
   a. curly b. striped c. sharp d. worried
9. SB The teacher .... all his children kindly.
   a. invites b. treats c. stands d. gets
10. WB The .... is an area of very dry land.
    a. dessert b. forest c. desert d. underground

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. I'd like to .... a selfie with my friends as usual.
    a. make b. take c. have d. do
12. Can you .... the meaning of the word "desert" ?
    a. invite b. guess c. treat d. sew
13. You can put your .... on the plane when you travel.
    a. suits b. pencil cases c. suitcases d. shopping bags

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. I usually get .... from my friends on my phone.
    a. texts b. taxis c. taxes d. fixes
15. I .... well at school, so my father bought me a mobile.
    a. made b. took c. had d. did
16. I'm grateful to you .... your help.
    a. to b. for c. about d. over
17. My grandfather has stopped .... since 2002.
    a. smoking b. smoke c. to smoke d. smoked
18. Think .... some of the things that make you feel happy.
    a. in b. on c. about d. of

Research skills المهارات البحثية



تدرب على القيام بالأنشطة البحثية لتنمية مهارة البحث في موضوع معين يقيس ما تعلمته من مهارات مختلفة من المواد الدراسية الأخرى.

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

III Language

Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة.
والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى.

adjective الصفة	adverb الظرف
They are quiet people. Our team are bad. الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد Verb (to be)	Our team are playing badly. الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده

Regular المنتظم		Irregular غير المنتظم	
Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
bad سىء	badly بطريقة سيئة	good جيد	well جيداً
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء	fast سريع	fast بسرعة
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ	hard صعب	hard بصعوبة
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة	right صحيح	right بطريقة صحيحة
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء	wrong خطأ	wrong بطريقة خاطئة
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة	late متأخر	late متأخراً
sad حزين	sadly بحزن	early مبكر	early مبكراً
kind عطوف	kindly بعطف / بطيبة		

Formation التكوين

يتكون ظرف (الحال) الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) الي الصفة:

1. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلي الصفة

- quick - quickly
- strong - strongly
- excited - excitedly
- safe - safely

ب. وتُضاف (ly) حتي وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)
- beautiful - beautifully
- careful - carefully

ج. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)
- probable - probably
- possible - possibly

د. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول الي (ily)
- happy - happily
- hungry - hungrily
- easy - easily
- lazy - lazily

هـ. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها (ly) وتحفظ كما هى :
- fast - fast
- late - late
- good - well
- hard - hard
- early - early

Usage الاستخدام

We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

● تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التى يؤدى بها شخص ما شئ ما)

ex.: - Rodina sings well. - He works slowly.

لاحظ أن ظروف الكيفية تجيب عن السؤال الذى يبدأ بـ (How):

- A: How does Aya eat? B: She eats hungrily.
- A: How do you drive a car? B: I drive it carefully.

- يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

- She walks slowly.
- The teacher called our names loudly.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB I'm waiting .... to get on a plane for the first time.
   a. exciting b. excited c. excitedly d. more excited
2. SB Mr Ahmed speaks English ....
   a. well b. good c. bad d. clear

3. SB The cat is sitting in the sun ....

a. lazy   b. lazily   c. laziest   d. lazier

4. WB The children are singing .... in the playground.

a. loudly   b. loud   c. more loud   d. most loud

5. WB It is important to drive .... when it is raining.

a. most careful   b. more careful   c. careful   d. carefully

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Sama walks ....

a. quick   b. quickly   c. quicker   d. quickest

7. My cousin is very .... at playing tennis.

a. best   b. better   c. good   d. well

8. Waleed did very .... in his exams last week.

a. good   b. well   c. best   d. the best

9. It was raining .... yesterday.

a. heavy   b. heavier   c. heaviest   d. heavily

10. My brother speaks very ....

a. quiet   b. quietly   c. more quiet   d. most quiet

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB My friend sews bad. (..................)
2. WB Ahmed went to the new school sad. (..................)
3. SB The teacher treats all her children kind. (..................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. My friends are smiling happy. (..................)
5. Omar is a fast runner. He runs faster. (..................)
6. Ali climbed the hill easy. (..................)
7. Salma is a good singer. She sings good. (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets :

1. Ali speaks very .... (quick) .
2. Nader plays basketball .... (good).
3. My friend speaks English .... (bad).
4. He answers the questions .... (easy).
5. Always speak .... (quiet) to your parents.

IV Speaking Corner

Describing a photo : وصف صورة / وصف ما يحدث فى صورة :

- This is a photo of me and my family in Al Azhar Park.

- هذه صورة لى ولعائلتى بحديقة الأزهر.

- In the foreground, we can see my sister, my mother and my brother.

- فى المقدمة، يمكننا أن نرى أختى ووالدتى وأخى.

- In the background, we can see my father sitting on the grass.

- فى الخلفية، يمكننا أن نرى والدى يجلس على الأعشاب.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

Writing about actions and descriptions in a photo

1. In the foreground of the photo, my sister, Talia is trying to open a box.

١. أختى تاليا تحاول أن تفتح صندوق فى مقدمة الصورة.

2. In the middle of the photo, my dad is smiling excitedly at me.

٢. فى وسط الصورة والدى يبتسم بحماس لى.

3. My mother is reading the newspaper carefully on the left of the photo.

٣. تقرأ والدتى الجريدة بعناية على يسار الصورة.

General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Adel is a / an .... teenager.
   a. strange b. normal c. crazy d. abnormal
2. Adel gets .... from his friends.
   a. texts b. subjects c. hobbies d. sports
3. Adel's friends say that they all do .... things.
   a. big b. happy c. exciting d. good
4. Adel often feels .... about things.
   a. worried b. sad c. happy d. big

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen : Where did you go last weekend ?
Hazem : (1) ....
Mazen : Al Azhar Park ! (2) .... ?
Hazem : To enjoy my weekend.
Mazen : Who did you go with ?
Hazem : (3) ....
Mazen : (4) .... ?
Hazem : I went to Al Azhar Park in my father's car.
Mazen : What did you do there ?
Hazem : (5) ....
Mazen : Really ! (6) .... ?
Hazem : Yes, we had a nice time there.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the .... of the photo, we can see a man sitting under a tree.
   a. ground b. underground c. top d. middle
2. I'd like to .... you to my wedding party.
   a. catch b. wait c. invite d. treat

3. WB A/An .... is a boy or girl aged 13 – 19.
   a. old man b. baby c. child d. teenager
4. Be careful. The knife is very ....
   a. grateful b. sharp c. dry d. wet
5. I like to stay .... at home on holidays.
   a. alone b. poor c. only d. just
6. WB You can ....a plane from an airport.
   a. hit b. catch c. miss d. drive
7. The desert is an area of .... land.
   a. dream b. happy c. dry d. wet
8. That eagle is flying very .... I think it is the fastest bird.
   a. fast b. straight c. early d. late
9. There are sharp rocks here, so you have to be ....
   a. careful b. carefully c. carelessness d. carelessly
10. Ali did his homework .... , so the teacher punished عاقب him.
    a. careless b. carelessness c. more careless d. carelessly

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB My sister speaks very quiet. (..............................)
2. Why do you play the drums ? - I play them hard. (..............................)
3. It's raining heavy now. You must take an umbrella with you. (..............................)
4. SB The friends are smiling happy. (..............................)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets :

1. Never speak .... (loud).
2. He's walking .... (lazy).
3. The train goes .... (fast).
4. Mr. Baleegh works .... (hard).
5. Birds get up .... (early).

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Making new friend"

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Congratulations !	تهانينا! / ألف مبروك	pity (n)	مؤسف / محزن
conversation (n)	محادثة	greetings (n)	[illegible]
respond (ed) (v)	يجيب / يرد	empathy (n)	[illegible]
news (n)	أخبار	interview (n)	[illegible] شخصية

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من	coach (n)	[illegible]
pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز / يمر	worry (ied) (v)	[illegible]
sorry (adj)	آسف / حزين	really (adv)	[illegible]
bank (n)	بنك	soon (adv)	[illegible] / في القريب العاجل
practice (n)	تدريب	hope (d) (v)	[illegible]

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد (شيء / شخص)	recently (adv)	[illegible] / مؤخرًا
science teacher (n)	مدرس علوم	suitable (adj)	مناسب / [illegible]
Amman (n)	مدينة عمان	dear (adj)	[illegible] / غال
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم / يعرف	prepare (d) (v)	يجهز / [illegible]
problems (n)	مشاكل	share (d) (v)	يتشارك / [illegible]
math test (n)	اختبار رياضيات	wait (ed) (v)	[illegible]
system (n)	نظام		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
come	يأتي	came	come
leave	يغادر	left	left
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
cloudy	ملبد بالسحب	clear	صافٍ / واضح
funny	مضحك	serious	جاد
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب
useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد
married	متزوج	single / unmarried	أعزب / غير متزوج

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

empathy	the ability to understand how someone feels تعاطف
That's / It's a pity	something you say to show you feel sad about something إنه من المؤسف / المحزن

11 Listening and Reading

Listening

- on Lesson 5 SB page 19

1



Ali : Hi Yasser! Are you coming to football practice(1) on Thursday ?

Yasser : Oh Hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad(2) is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better(3) soon. It's a pity(4) that you can't come. Maybe(5) see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser : Thanks Ali.

2



Yasser : Hey Ali, Guess what(6)! I'm in the football team(7)! The coach(8) told me after football practice last night.

Ali : Well done(9), Yasser! That's great news(10).

3



Hana : Hello Salma. How are you ? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school ? Are you enjoying it ?

Salma : Hello Hana. Great to see you, too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night.

Hana : That must be difficult. But don't worry : things will get better with time. You were always the best student in our class!

Check Vocabulary

(1) تدريب كرة قدم	(2) جد	(3) يتحسن	(4) إنه من المؤسف	(5) من المحتمل / ربما
(6) خمن ماذا	(7) فريق كرة قدم	(8) مدرب	(9) أحسنت صنعًا	(10) هذه أخبار رائعة

4



Hana : Hi Huda. How are things ?

Huda : Hello Hana! Fine thanks. I passed my English exam[1]!

Hana : Congratulations![2] I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اجتزت امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية	(2) تهانينا

Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Hi Salma

How are you ? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss[1] you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving ! She is such a good science teacher[2] and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what ? My parents say I can go on the school trip[3] to Amman. I am very excited ! There are many amazing[4] places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news ? Write soon !

Injy

Check Vocabulary

(1) يفتقد شخص	(2) مدرس علوم	(3) رحلة مدرسية	(4) رائع / مذهل

Listening

• on Lesson 6 WB page 84



Hi Tarek

How's it going ? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term[1] ?

The news from me is that we are moving to[2] a new house! I'm so excited[3] because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I've got some bad news, too. I'm sharing the room[4] with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward to[5] meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing[6] at the beach this year ?

I can't wait to see you. Write soon !

Tamer

Check Vocabulary

(1) فصل دراسى	(2) ينتقل إلى	(3) متحمس / منفعل	(4) يتشارك فى الحجرة	(5) يتطلع إلى	(6) إبحار

Reading

• on Lesson 6 WB page 84

My name is Dina. I am Egyptian but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandparents. Who do you live with ? Write soon.

From Dina

• on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Hi

How are you ? I hope you are well. Guess what! I've passed my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard to pass it next time. It's raining today, so I'm happily sitting in my bedroom. I'm playing a game with my sister. What's your news ?

Write soon!

Huda

• on Lesson 7 WB page 85



This is a photo of a market. In the foreground towards the left, we can see a man. I think it is his shop and he is selling fruit and other things. In the middle of the picture we can see a man on a bicycle. He is carrying something. On the right, we can see two women. I think they want to buy something.

In the background, we can see some other people.

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
news	أخبار (تعامل معاملة المفرد)	– What's your news ? (SB page 20)
a piece of news	خبر واحد	– This is a good piece of news.
pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان	– Guess what ! I've passed my maths exam. (SB page 21)
succeed in the exam	ينجح فى الاختبار	– I succeeded in the final exam.

sorry to (+ inf.) sorry for + (inf. + ing)	آسف / حزين لـ آسف / حزين على	– I'm sorry to hear that. (SB page – I'm sorry for hearing that.
miss miss	يفتقد (شخص) يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات)	– We really miss you. (SB page – We missed the train because we g up late.
such + a / an (adj. + n.)	بمعنى جدًا أو بمعنى أنه حقًا...	– She is such a good science teach (SB page
Expressions and Prepositions		**تعبيرات وحروف الجر**
get better	يتحسن	– Don't worry, I'm sure things will g better with time. (SB page
It's a pity	من المؤسف / من المحزن	– It's a pity that you can't come. (SB page
happy for	سعيد من أجل	– I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam (SB page
show empathy	يبين التعاطف	– It is important to show empathy when your friends are sad. (SB page
prepare ... for	يجهز ... لـ	– This person prepares food for people to eat. (SB page 2
have an interview	لديه مقابلة رسمية	– She had an interview at the bank for a new job. (WB page
do an interview	يقوم بمقابلة شخصية	– She did the interview online. (WB page
Congratulations ... on + n /(inf. + ing)	تهانينا على ...	– Congratulations on passing your maths test! (WB page

Exercise on Vocabulary

● **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. When you have .... , you can imagine how other people feel.
   a. shame b. greeting c. empathy d. interview
2. .... ! You have passed a really difficult exam.
   a. Sorry b. Congratulations c. Done d. Worry
3. I have a/an .... for a new job in Cairo.
   a. review b. article c. interview d. conversation
4. It's a/an .... that she didn't come. It was a fantastic party.
   a. pity b. empathy c. expression d. respond
5. Millions of .... cards are sent at the wedding.
   a. pity b. difficult c. greeting d. empathy

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

6. SB Well done, Yasser ! That's great .... !
   a. science b. phrase c. empathy d. news
7. WB I'm .... the room with my brother.
   a. keeping b. sharing c. singing d. jumping

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. My dad always helps me with my ....
   a. smiles b. happiness c. problems d. places
9. It is difficult to .... a house without children.
   a. hope b. imagine c. check d. leave
10. I've some good news, too. .... what ?
    a. Introduce b. Guess c. Miss d. Sorry

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. The street-food seller prepares food .... people to eat.
    a. to b. from c. of d. for
12. I was late for the football .... yesterday.
    a. break b. practice c. feeling d. empathy

13. I've .... my maths exam. I'm really happy.
a. succeeded b. failed c. passed d. worked
14. It's a .... that you didn't pass your driving test.
a. pay b. plenty c. pity d. pan
15. He .... an interview online for a new job from his house.
a. had b. made c. played d. shopped
16. It is important to .... empathy when your friend had an accident.
a. prepare b. show c. do d. make
17. Our manager .... the interview for many people online.
a. made b. did c. take d. had

III Speaking Corner

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

Good news أخبار جيدة

Yasser : I've passed my exam.
Me : Well done, Yasser! That's great news.

ياسر : لقد اجتزت الامتحان الخاص بي.
أنا : أحسنت يا ياسر. إنها أخبار عظيمة.

Adel : I solved all the maths sums.
Me : Congratulations! I'm so happy for you. Every one knows that's a really difficult exam.

عادل : لقد قمت بحل جميع المسائل الحسابية.
أنا : تهانينا! أنا سعيد جدًا لأجلك. الكل يعلم أنه حقًا امتحان صعب.

Bad news أخبار سيئة

Heba : My uncle had an accident.
Me : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better soon.

هبة : لقد وقع حادث لعمي.
أنا : أنا حزينة لسماعي ذلك. أتمنى أن يتعافى قريبًا.

Yara : I'm sorry, I won't come to the party.
Ola : It's a pity that you can't come.

يارا : أنا أسفة لن أستطيع الذهاب للحفلة.
علا : من المؤسف أنك لن تستطيعي الحضور.

Sara : I didn't join the school team.
Soha : That must be difficult. But don't worry, I'm sure things will be better with time.

سارة : لم أنضم إلى فريق المدرسة.
سها : من المؤكد أنه شيء صعب. لكن لا تقلقي. أنا متأكدة أن الأمور سوف تسير على ما يرام مع الوقت.

IV Writing

Useful phrases to use in an email عبارات مفيدة لتستخدمها فى كتابة بريد إلكترونى

- يمكن أن تبدأ رسالتك بإحدى هذه العبارات متبوعة باسم المرسل إليه
- Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,

- استخدم العبارات الآتية للسؤال عن الحالة
- How are you ? / How are things ? / How's it going ? / How's life ?

- استخدم العبارات الآتية عند تقديم الأخبار
- The news from me / us is that .... / Guess what ? ....

- استخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المشاعر
- (I / We miss you) / (I / We hope that you are ...) / (I'm so excited / sad because السبب)

- استخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المستقبل
- (I'm looking forward to ...) / I can't wait (to)...
- (Write soon) / (See you soon). استخدم هذه العبارات عندما تنهى رسالة البريد الإلكترونى.

Remember تذكر

- A sentence ends with a full stop (.). - الجملة تنتهى بنقطة
- A question ends with a question mark (?). - السؤال ينتهى بعلامة استفهام
- A sentence begins with a capital letter. - الجملة تبدأ بحرف كبير
- We use commas (,) between clauses of a sentence :
  - نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية بين أجزاء الجمل والعبارات.
- We also use commas in lists :
  - نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية أيضًا فى القوائم

Self Assessment Activity



قيم نفسك

- ليتعرف الطالب على مدى إتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- فى حالة عدم اجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى.

General Exercises On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Basem : Hello Wafaa. Great to see you !

Wafaa : (1) .... !

Basem : How are things ?

Wafaa : (2) .... (3) .... ?

Basem : I'm fine, too. I've passed my exams.

Wafaa : (4) ....

Basem : Thanks. (5) .... ?

Wafaa : Me ! I passed but with low marks.

Basem : I'm sorry to hear that.

Wafaa : (6) .... ?

Basem : You should study hard next year.

Wafaa : Thanks for your advice.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My brother didn't .... his exams. He is sad.
   a. succeed b. pass c. get d. achieve
2. SB There are many .... places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.
   a. amazement b. amaze c. amazed d. amazing
3. People put their money in a/an ....
   a. factory b. bank c. airport d. interview
4. The opposite of "useless" is ....
   a. careful b. useful c. careless d. grateful
5. I'm sorry about your accident. I hope you will .... better soon
   a. play b. have c. get d. pass
6. I arrived at the bus stop late so I .... the bus.
   a. caught b. missed c. handed d. reached
7. Mr Nader is .... a good science teacher. I really love him.
   a. such b. so c. very d. quite

8. .... the middle of the picture, we can see a man on a bicycle.
   a. In b. On c. At d. From
9. I share good ideas .... my friends.
   a. of b. to c. with d. about
10. WB I'm looking .... to meeting you in the summer.
   a. forward b. backward c. foreground d. background

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The friends are smiling <u>happy</u>. (..............................)
2. Why are you <u>laugh</u> ? (..............................)
3. WB The pilot usually flies planes. Now he <u>speaks</u> on the phone. (..............................)
4. She is looking forward to <u>pass</u> her exams. (..............................)

4 Write an email of NINETY(90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Ali congratulating him on his success. Your name is Samir and your email address is samir@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Self Assessment Activity
التقييم الذاتي

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد .
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية

At the end of this unit, I will be able to .... في نهاية هذه الوحدة. سأكون قادرًا على ....

1 Learn important vocabulary أتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ call – centre worker
- ☐ computer engineer
- ☐ police officer
- ☐ street – food seller
- ☐ foreground
- ☐ shop worker
- ☐ carefully
- ☐ food stall
- ☐ background
- ☐ Congratulations !

2 Read and write sentences using the present continuous, present simple and adverbs of manner

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر وزمن المضارع البسيط وظروف الكيفية

- ☐ Policemen are driving around the city and making sure that the people are safe.
- ☐ Mr Osman lives in a lovely flat.
- ☐ I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily having my lunch.
- ☐ Mr Ahmed speaks English well.

3 Respond to good news and bad news

أرد على الأخبار الجيدة والأخبار السيئة

- ☐ A : I gave birth to a baby girl.
  B : Congratulations !
- ☐ A : I can't come to school today.
  B : It's a pity that you can't come.

لمزيد من التدريبات . جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

Review on unit 2

SB page 21 WB page 85

1. Vocabulary

call-centre worker	موظف مركز اتصالات	badly	بطريقة سيئة
computer engineer	مهندس حاسبات	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
police officer	ضابط شرطة	happily	بسعادة
street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول	loudly	بصوت عالٍ
food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام (فى الشارع)	slowly	ببطئ
shop worker	عامل فى محل	well	بطريقة جيدة
ward	عنبر (فى مستشفى)	weekend activities	أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
smile	يبتسم	in the foreground	فى المقدمة
in the background	فى الخلفية	striped	مخطط / ذو خطوط
crowds	زحام (من الناس)	empathy	تعاطف
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	Congratulations !	تهانينا!

2. Language

1. The difference between the present simple and the present continuous

The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط	The present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر
We use the present simple for : • **habits** I always drink milk for breakfast. • **routines and repeated actions** We go to school every day. • **things that are always true** My aunt lives in Cairo.	**We use the present continuous for :** • **things happening now** I am sitting in my English class. • **unfinished actions in progress around now** My sister is learning to dance. • **temporary situations or actions** They are painting the school this week.

2. Adverbs of manner

ظروف الكيفية

- We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.

quick → quickly loud → loudly easy → easily lazy → lazily

- Some adverbs are irregular :

من الظروف غير المنتظمة

good → well fast → fast hard → hard early → early

3. Speaking

Responding to good and bad news

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة والأخبار السيئة

Stimulus	Response
• I've passed my driving test.	- Congratulations !
• My sister didn't pass the English exam.	- I'm sorry to hear that.
• My uncle is very ill.	- That must be difficult for you. But don't worry, I'm sure he will get better soon.
• I came first in the art competition.	- Well done. That's great news !

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات ورسائل بريد إلكترونى هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model email

From : injy@gmail.com
To : salma@gmail.com
About : Bad news and good news

Hi Salma,

How are you ? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss you. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving ! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what ?

My parents say I can go on the school trip to Amman. I am very excited ! There are many amazing places to visit there. I hope you come with me. It will be nice to get around together. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So, what's your news ? Write soon !

Yours,

Injy

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكترونى"

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ Night workers / A visit to Al Azhar Park / Describing a photo / An email about good news and bad news / Teenagers and their needs / Describing the weekend activities

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- Do you like working at night ?
- Is working at night important for people ?
- Mention some people who work at night.

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Words related to night workers	
call-centre worker	ward
police officer	food stall
computer engineer	street
nurse	cook
street-food seller	artist
shop worker	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

– The role of police officers is	– The shop worker helps ....
– It's not healthy to	– The computer engineer can help in ....

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

"Night workers"

....
....
....
....
....

Night workers and what teenagers need project worksheet
ورقة بحثية عن الأشخاص الذين يعملون ليلاً واحتياجات المراهقين



Objectives الأهداف

1. To talk about people who work at night. تتحدث عن الأشخاص الذين يعملون ليلاً.
2. To identify the teenagers' needs. تتعرف على احتياجات المراهقين.

Get started استعد

1. Why do some people work at night? لماذا يعمل بعض الأشخاص ليلاً؟
2. As a teenager, what do you need to do and not to do? كمراهق، ماذا تحتاج أن تفعله / لا تفعله؟

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on night workers.
اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن الأشخاص الذين يعملون ليلاً.

OR Write a short paragraph on the needs of teenagers.
اكتب فقرة قصيرة عن احتياجات المراهقين.

Support your paragraph using pictures. ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg
* The internet
* Student's books

- بنك المعرفة المصرى
- الانترنت
- الكتب المدرسية

Test

1 Listen

1. The s
a. m
2. He is
a. da
3. Lots
a. to
4. Nov
a. h

2 Com

3 Re

Test yourself unit 2

تنويه
يمكنك حل
الاختبار الكترونيًا
وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The street - food seller is .... his food stall here.
   a. making b. parking c. sailing d. selling
2. He is looking forward to drinking .... coffee.
   a. dark b. light c. hot d. cold
3. Lots of .... come this way to his food stall.
   a. tourists b. passengers c. mechanics d. workers
4. Now, he is feeling ....
   a. hot b. cold c. warm d. cool

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Shop assistant : How can I help you ?
Customer : (1) ....
Shop assistant : (2) .... ?
Customer : I want it medium, please.
Shop assistant : Is this OK ?
Customer : (3) ....
Shop assistant : (4) .... ?
Customer : I'd like light blue.
Shop assistant : Here you are. (5) .... ?
Customer : Yes. It's good. How much is it ?
Shop assistant : It is 197 pounds.
Customer : OK. I'll buy it.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Dear Ayman,

I'd like to tell you about my new preparatory school. It's near my house, so I walk to get there. The school teachers are very kind and they help me a lot. I was not good at maths last year. But Mr Ramzy

helped me to do better. This subject is very important for our daily life. Our school library is full of **interesting** books. I go **there** once a week to borrow one. After reading, I make the most important notes to help me know a lot about the world and our life. Please, write back to tell me about the time we'll meet.

Yours,

Ashraf

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What does the underlined word **"there"** refer to ?

....

3. What do you think about what Ashraf does after reading ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**interesting**" is "..............".
   a. exciting b. boring c. dirty d. important
5. Ashraf walks to school because ....
   a. it's near b. it's new
   c. it's far d. the teachers are kind
6. Ashraf goes to the library .... a week.
   a. once b. twice c. three times d. four times

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Why is Kamal .... his food stall at this place ? - Because it is the best place.
   a. barking b. moving c. parking d. preparing
2. Calligraphers خطاطين are the people who are good at ....
   a. languages b. Chinese
   c. calligraphy d. communication

3. Deaf people can communicate with others using .... language.
   a. sewing b. painting c. sign d. hand
4. I'm .... cold, so I'll have a cup of hot tea.
   a. falling b. feeling c. trying d. finding
5. Ahmed is a fantastic .... He prepares meals in a big restaurant.
   a. cook b. engineer c. sailor d. pilot
6. Sameh is a hard worker. He works ....
   a. hardly b. hardy c. hardness d. hard
7. SB The cat is sitting in the sun ....
   a. lazily b. lazy c. lazier d. laziest
8. They .... the school this week. I hope it will be beautiful.
   a. paint b. painted c. paints d. are painting
9. My friend has passed an important exam. He is .... happily.
   a. drying b. smiling c. crying d. sweeping

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. I am .... (learn) to sail but Aya doesn't like the water very much.
2. Manal and Mona .... (studies) calligraphy every day.
3. We are .... (watch) a film now.
4. What does Emad .... (eats) ?

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are your mother working ? (................)
2. I usually drinking tea at 5:00 p.m. (................)
3. SB I usually having my dinner before I start my homework. (................)
4. Do you feeling sad ? (................)

E. Writing

7 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"

Unit 3 Great Jobs



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors ; a text about heroes
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about your partner's past; a text about your hero
- **Listening :**
  Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand
- **Language :**
  used to
- **Life Skills :**
  Collaboration; communication
- **Values :**
  Work values; Love and respect for homeland and the family
- **Issues :**
  Citizenship; loyalty and belonging; National unity

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة.
• ملحق المهارات.

Lessons 1
SB pages 22 2
1 Voca
Key Voc
date of birth
hero (n)
junior (adj) ,
senior (adj) ,
surgeon (n)
patron (n)
Lesson
Ancient Eg
princess (n
khedive (n
national u
Cairo Univ
shark (n)
attack (e
heart pro
experime
Lesso
handbal
Africa C

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22 25 WB pages 86 & 87



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

date of birth = birth date (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة
hero (n)	بطل	handball (n)	رياضة كرة اليد
junior (adj) , (n)	ناشىء / حديث السن	final (adj) , (n)	نهائى - مباراة نهائية
senior (adj) , (n)	شخص أكبر سنا		
jobs وظائف			
surgeon (n)	طبيب جراح	sports coach (n)	مدرب رياضى
patron (n)	راع/كفيل	nuclear scientist (n)	عالم نووى

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

Ancient Egyptians (n)	المصريون القدماء	primary (adj)	ابتدائى
princess (n)	أميرة	preparatory (adj)	إعدادى
khedive (n)	خديوى (حاكم مصر)	nuclear (adj)	نووى
national university (n)	الجامعة الوطنية	treatments (n)	علاجات
Cairo University (n)	جامعة القاهرة	medicine (n)	الطب - دواء
shark (n)	سمكة القرش	nervous (adj)	متوتر / عصبى
attack (ed) (v) , (n)	يهاجم - هجوم	discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
heart problems (n)	مشاكل بالقلب	improve (d)	يحسن
experiments (n)	تجارب (علمية)	land (n)	أرض

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

handball team	فريق كرة يد	prize (n)	جائزة
Africa Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الأفريقية	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق

Tunisia (n)	دولة تونس	goal (n)	مرمى-هدف
against (prep)	ضد / فى مواجهة	chess (n)	شطرنج
Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا	chess player (n)	لاعب شطرنج
score (d) (v)	يسجل / يحرز (أهدافا)	event (n)	حدث
teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي	Tunisian (adj)	تونسي (الجنسية)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bear	يلد	bore	born
mean	يعني/يقصد	meant	meant
throw	يرمي/يلقي	threw	thrown
become	يصبح	became	become

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
junior	حديث السن	senior	أكبر سناً
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور
successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	غير ناجح / فاشل
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

handball	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal كرة اليد
competition	an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something مسابقة-بطولة
sports coach	• someone teaches people how to play or improve a sport • a person who trains or helps people to do a sport مدرب رياضي

win	• the first person or team in a game or competition • the opposite of "lose"	يفوز
junior	• for younger people. • connected with young people or involving young people	الناشئين (أقل من ١٨ سنة)
senior	• for older people • more advanced or older	الشباب (أكثر من ١٨ سنة)
surgeon	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill	طبيب جراح
scientist	someone who does experiments to study and find out about how things work	عالم
Patron	a person who gives money to help people or places.	راع/كفيل
hero	a person that people admire because they have done something very brave or good	بطل
female	being a woman or a girl	انثى

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	married	يتزوج	**win**	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
	a job	يحصل على وظيفة			
do	experiments	يقوم بتجارب علمية	**lose**	a leg	يفقد ساقه
start	preparatory school	يبدأ الدراسة بالمرحلة الإعدادية		a competition	يخسر مسابقة
	a charity	ينشأ مؤسسة خيرية			



للمتابعة اليومية

ملحق المهارات

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Famous people in Egypt

أشخاص مشهورون فى مصر



Name	الاسم
Magdy Yacoub	مجدي يعقوب
Date of birth	**تاريخ الميلاد**
1935	١٩٣٥
Job	**الوظيفة**
surgeon	جراح



Name	الاسم
Princess Fatma Ismail	أميرة فاطمة إسماعيل
Date of birth	**تاريخ الميلاد**
1853	١٨٥٣
Job	**الوظيفة**
patron	راعٍ / كفيل



Name	الاسم
Omar Abdel Kader	عمر عبدالقادر
Date of birth	**تاريخ الميلاد**
1994	١٩٩٤
Job	**الوظيفة**
sports coach	مدرب رياضى



Name	الاسم
Sameera Moussa	سميرة موسى
Date of birth	**تاريخ الميلاد**
1917	١٩١٧
Job	**الوظيفة**
scientist	عالمة

11 Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23



1. **Photo one** shows **Omar Abdelkader**. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark[1] attacked[2] him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful[3]. Now he helps other people with similar[4] problems and he is an important sports coach[5].



2. **Photo two** shows **Sameera Moussa**. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female[6] nuclear scientist[7] and wanted to use nuclear treatments[8] in medicine[9]. She died in 1952.



3. **Photo three** shows **Magdy Yacoub**. He was born in Cairo in 1935. He went to Cairo University[10] and became an important heart surgeon[11]. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity[12] to help children with heart problems[13].



4. **Photo four** shows **Princess Fatma Ismail**. The princess[14] was the daughter[15] of Khedive Ismail[16] and she was born in 1853. She became a patron[17] of Egypt's first national university[18] after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.

Check Vocabulary

(1) سمكة القرش	(2) يهاجم	(3) ناجح	(4) مشابه	(5) مدرب رياضى	(6) أنثى
(7) عالم نووى	(8) علاجات	(9) الطب	(10) جامعة القاهرة	(11) جراح قلب	(12) يبدأ فى إدارة جمعية خيرية
(13) ذوى المشاكل القلبية	(14) أميرة	(15) ابنة	(16) الخديوى إسماعيل	(17) راعٍ / كفيل	(18) الجامعة الوطنية

Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 86

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They then lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later when I was born.

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Egyptian heroes ![1]

The Egyptian handball team [2] are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations[3] in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final[4] against[5] Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!



This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[6] won the under-19 World Cup[7] Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[8] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost[9] the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope[10] the Egyptian team can win competitions[11] again !

Check Vocabulary

(1) أبطال	(2) فريق كرة اليد المصرى	(3) كاس الأمم الأفريقية	(4) مباراة نهائية	(5) ضد	(6) فريق الشباب
(7) كأس العالم	(8) الفريق الأول	(9) يخسر	(10) يتمنى	(11) منافسات / مسابقات	

• on Lesson 2 WB page 87

My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition for a team in our city. The team didn't win, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it !



Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes — الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
try to + inf.	تستخدم بمعنى يحاول أن وتأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر	– The firemen try to put out the fire.
sport (n)	تستخدم كاسم بمعنى رياضة	– Handball is my favourite sport.
sports (adj)	تستخدم كصفة بمعنى رياضى	– Omar Abdelkader worked as a sports coach. *(SB page 22)*
win	تستخدم بمعنى يفوز بـ(ميدالية - كأس - مباراة - مسابقة)	– We were very pleased when we won the competition.
earn	تستخدم بمعنى يكسب (مالًا)	– If you work hard, you'll earn a lot of money.

Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples
(be) born in	يولد فى (مكان)	– Sameera Moussa was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo university. *(SB page 23)*
a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	– Dr Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work a long time ago. *(SB page 23)*

by + (inf.+ing)	بمعنى بواسطة ويتبعها (inf. + ing)	– People try to get a prize by b... the best at something. (SB p...
people with heart problems	الأشخاص الذين يعانون من مشاكل في القلب	– He helped people with heart problems for many years. (SB pag...
look inside the body	يفحص الجسم من الداخل	– A surgeon knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. (WB page...
under-19 World Cup Final	نهائي كأس العالم للشباب تحت ١٩ سنة	– In 2019, the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany. (SB page...
become the number one chess player	يصبح لاعب الشطرنج الأول	– In 1990, he became the number one chess player in our city.
throw ... into	يلقي ... في	– A team scores by throwing the ball into a goal.
play for	يلعب لصالح (فريق)	– I'd like to play for the Egyptian Football Senior Team.

Exercise on Vocabulary

◎ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is someone who teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
   a. sports player b. sports star c. sports coach d. sportsma...
2. A .... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a. surgeon b. patient c. scientist d. worker

3. A .... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
   a. surgeon   b. charity worker   c. patient   d. scientist
4. A/An .... is a person who gives money to help people or places.
   a. sports coach   b. surgeon   c. patron   d. engineer
5. The .... team won the under -19 World Cup Final.
   a. senior   b. oldest   c. children   d. junior
6. "Superman" is my favourite .... He saved many people.
   a. teacher   b. hero   c. doctor   d. friend
7. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.
   a. Chess   b. Football   c. Handball   d. Tennis

SB and WB exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. WB Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first .... nuclear scientist.
   a. male   b. female   c. girl   d. daughter
9. WB Dr Magdy Yacoub started a charity to help children with .... problems.
   a. cold   b. eyes   c. heart   d. legs
10. WB Before Sameera Moussa .... in 1952, she wanted to use nuclear treatments in medicine.
   a. born   b. graduated   c. started   d. died

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. Leen was very .... , so she wasn't afraid of the dog.
   a. sad   b. bad   c. brave   d. big
12. We hope our team can win the ....
   a. charity   b. experiments   c. world cup   d. operation
13. In handball game, you score by throwing the ball into a ....
   a. basket   b. pool   c. goal   d. point

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. They became heroes by .... great jobs.
a. do   b. doing   c. did   d. done

15. He .... the number one chess player in his family.
a. gave   b. made   c. became   d. took

16. Try to .... your homework by doing a research.
a. doing   b. does   c. done   d. do

III Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتـة

A. Regular verbs :: أ. الأفعال المنتظمة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

لاحظ قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

الفعل المنتهى بـ	يضاف له	Example مثـال
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y + (حرف ساكن)	+ ied	carry → carried
y + (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped

B. Irregular verbs : : ب. الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحظ الآتى : يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالآتى :

- I / He / She / It —فاعل مفرد→ was / wasn't
- We / They / You —فاعل جمع→ were / weren't

ex. - Dr Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935.
- The Egyptian handball team were the first team from Africa to win the World Cup.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

لاحظ فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach 3 months ago.

A. Yes/No questions : : أ. السؤال بـ "هل"

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

فى صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Did you clean the car yesterday ?
- Yes, I did. -No, I didn't.

Unit 3

ب- السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

B. Wh-questions : في حالة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + **did** + **subject** (الفاعل) + **inf.** (المصدر) **?**

ex. - What did you study ?
- Where did she go ?

Key words كلمات دالة

- in the past في الماضي
- مدة محددة + ago منذ
- yesterday أمس
- in + سنة ماضية (2000)
- from + سنة ماضية to سنة ماضية
- When I was (young)/(little) عندما كنت صغيراً في السن
- for + مدة زمنية محددة

last →
- year السنة الماضية
- month الشهر الماضى
- week الأسبوع الماضى
- Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضى

ex. - Dr Magdy Yacoub helped people with heart problems for many years.
- Dr Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.
- From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.

Usage الاستخدام

(1) It is used to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

ex.: - Maha made her bed last night.
- She went to school two hours ago.

(2) It is used to talk about past habits. الحديث عن عادات كانت فى الماضى

- When I was young, I played football every day.

لاحظ الآتى :

كيفية نطق (ed) فى نهاية الافعال

ed

تنطق / t /	تنطق / d /	تنطق / Id /

إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية

تنطق / t /	تنطق / d /	تنطق / Id /
/p/ , /k/ /f/ , /s/ /ʃ/ /tʃ/	/b/ , /g/ /v/ , /z/ /ð/ , /ʒ/ /dʒ/ , /l/ /m/ , /n/ /vowel/صوت متحرك	/t/ , /d/

Examples :

/t/	
/p/	helped
/k/	liked walked talked
/f/	laughed
/s/	kissed
/ʃ/	washed brushed
/tʃ/	watched

/d/	
/l/	called
/m/	climbed
/n/	cleaned listened
vowel	played studied married
/v/	lived

/Id/	
/t/	greeted planted waited painted counted invited wanted
/d/	needed

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB He .... a junior chess competition when he was only 12!
   a. wins b. won c. winning d. was winning
2. WB My uncle Rashid .... born in 1961.
   a. were b. is c. was d. am
3. WB In 1990, he .... the number one chess player in our city.
   a. becomes b. become c. becoming d. became
4. SB When .... they win the World Cup Final ? – Last year.
   a. were b. had c. did d. does
5. SB Where did your parents .... when they were younger ?
   a. lived b. living c. live d. to live
6. SB Egypt's handball team .... in a final before. It's not the first time.
   a. play b. played c. playing d. plays

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. They .... the library ten minutes ago.
   a. leaves b. left c. leave d. leaving
8. We .... breakfast, went to school and did our homework.
   a. have b. having c. had d. has
9. They didn't .... to the stadium last match.
   a. to go b. going c. go d. went
10. Huda .... at home yesterday.
    a. was b. were c. is d. are
11. Were you worried about your brother ? Yes, ...
    a. I were b. I was c. you were d. you was
12. She .... the match yesterday. She enjoyed it very much.
    a. watched b. watching c. didn't watch d. doesn't watch
13. .... the children win the football match last week ?
    a. Was b. Do c. Did d. Were

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB In 1995, Dr Magdy Yacoub <u>start</u> a charity to help children with heart problems. (............)

2. WB They live in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. (..................)
3. SB Magdy Yacoub were born in 1935. (..................)
4. WB They get married in 1983. (..................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. She didn't gave me her name. (..................)
6. I didn't had my breakfast this morning. (..................)
7. Where did you learns swimming ? (..................)
8. The senior team doesn't win the final in 2018. (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. He .... (spend) a week in Alexandria last summer.
2. They .... (see) me at the club yesterday.
3. Two years ago, she .... (can't speak) English.
4. .... (Do) you visit the country before ?
5. Did Noha .... (went) home ?

IV Speaking corner

1. Asking and answering questions about what makes a hero :

١ وجه أسئلة والرد عليها حول ما يصنع البطل :

Questions	Answers
1. What makes a hero ? ١. ما الذي يصنع البطل ؟	– A hero should be brave, kind and patient. He shouldn't be nervous. – ينبغي أن يتسم البطل بالشجاعة والطيبة والصبر، ولا يجب عليه أن يكون عصبي.
2. Can you give examples of heroes from other countries ? ٢. هل يمكنك إعطاء أمثلة للأبطال من دول أخرى ؟	– Yes, I can. The American basketball player Michael Jordan who once didn't get into the school basketball team! – نعم، أستطيع. اللاعب الأمريكي مايكل جوردن الذي لم يلتحق بفريق كرة السلة المدرسي

2. Asking and answering questions about teamwork :
وجيه أسئلة والرد عليها حول العمل الجماعي

Questions	Answers
1. Why is teamwork important ? ١. لماذا العمل الجماعي مهم ؟	- Because when people have teamwork, they become successful. الناس عندما يتعاونوا يصبحون ...
2. Which team do you like ? Why ? ٢. أي فريق تحب ؟ لماذا ؟	- My favourite team is Liverpool. I like Liverpool because they play well. فريقي المفضل هو ليفربول أحب فريق ليفربول لأنهم يلعبون جيداً.
3. Did the team win many games last year ? Why / Why not ? ٣. هل فاز الفريق بمباريات كثيرة العام الماضي ؟ لماذا / لما لا ؟	- Yes, they won many games because they had teamwork skill. نعم، فازوا بمباريات عديدة لأنهم كان لديهم مهارة العمل الجماعي.
4. When did your favourite team last win a competition ? ٤. متى كانت آخر مرة فاز فريقك المفضل بمسابقة ؟	- My favourite team (Liverpool) won the European championship last year. - فريقي المفضل (ليفربول) فاز ببطولة أوروبا العام الماضي.
5. Would you like to play in a team ? Why ? ٥. هل تود أن تلعب في فريق ؟ لماذا ؟	- Yes, I'd like to play in a team to experience teamwork نعم أود أن ألعب في فريق حتى أجرب العمل الجماعي.

Quick Look

Skills

نمي مهاراتك بشكل مستمر
أثناء العام الدراسي
كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية
«امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق»

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The .... handball team are heroes.
   a. French   b. Arab   c. Egyptian   d. English
2. They won the handball .... Cup of Nations in 2020.
   a. Africa   b. Europe   c. Arab   d. World
3. The match was against ....
   a. Egypt   b. Oman   c. Tunisia   d. Sudan
4. Our team scored .... points.
   a. 24   b. 22   c. 29   d. 27

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Fatma : Hello Sara, What's your favourite sport ?
Sarah : Of course football.
Fatma : (1) .... ?
Sarah : My favourite footballer is MO Salah.
Fatma : (2) .... ?
Sarah : He plays for Liverpool.
Fatma : Why do you like him ?
Sarah : (3) ....
Fatma : And which is your favourite football team ?
Sarah : (4) ....
Fatma : (5) .... ?
Sarah : Yes, they score many goals.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB He .... Aunt Reem when he was 20.
   a. met   b. meet   c. meets   d. meeting
2. My father .... a job in Cairo five years ago.
   a. get   b. gets   c. got   d. to get
3. They moved to a new flat a year ....
   a. later   b. last   c. next   d. ago
4. That man had an accident yesterday and he .... his hand.
   a. lost   b. won   c. missed   d. got

5. There are many .... here. Be careful, they're dangerous.
a. dolphins b. sharks c. fish d. birds
6. A sports coach teaches people how to play or .... a sport.
a. improve b. eat c. damage d. throw
7. My little brother plays football in a .... team. He is 16.
a. old b. young c. junior d. senior
8. There are 5 .... in the basketball team.
a. coaches b. players c. surgeons d. scientists
9. My teacher is very .... He never gets nervous.
a. brave b. patient c. slow d. ugly
10. SB When Omar was 20, a shark .... him.
a. talked b. attacked c. helped d. won

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Was you busy last night ? (............)
4. Where do you go yesterday ? (............)
3. He were at school yesterday. (............)
4. I didn't won the prize. (............)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets

1. I .... (study) English last night.
2. It .... (be) cold yesterday.
3. We .... (not be) at school yesterday.
4. .... (be) they happy at yesterday's party ?
5. .... (you meet) Hoda last Monday.
6. He .... (use) to swim when he was young.

6 Write an email of NINETY(90) words :

الحل في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Maha to tell her about your favourite hero. Your name is Nour and your email address is nour@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is maha@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28 WB pages 88 & 89



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

charity (n)	جمعية خيرية / مؤسسة خيرية	lungs (n)	الرئتين
countryside (n)	الريف	heart (n)	القلب
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ	pump (ed) (v) , (n)	يضخ - مضخة
natural disaster (n)	كارثة طبيعية	burn (ed) (v) (n)	يحرق - حرق
proud (adj)	فخور	cut (v) , (n)	يقطع - قطع / جرح
volunteer (n)	متطوع	infection (n)	عدوى - إصابة
great - grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر	bones (n)	عظام
brain (n)	المخ	earthquake (n)	زلزال

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

family history (n)	تاريخ العائلة	scary (adj)	مخيف
necessary (adj)	ضروري / هام	health (n)	صحة
sick (adj)	مريض	life-lives (n)	حياة - حيوات
nature (n)	الطبيعة	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - يمر
terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع	great-grandmother	الجدة الكبرى
countryside (n)	الريف	special (adj)	خاص / مميز
school project (n)	مشروع / بحث دراسي	area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
the Red Crescent (n)	جمعية الهلال الأحمر		

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 89

parts (n)	أجزاء	medicines (n)	أدوية
function (n)	مهمة / وظيفة	infect (ed) (v)	يصيب بالعدوى / يعدى
air (n)	هواء	stomach (n)	المعدة
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	fill (ed) (v)	يملأ
blood (n)	الدم	patients (n)	المرضى

ideas (n)	أفكار	tomato plants (n)	نباتات الطماطم
plant (ed) (v), (n)	يزرع - نبات	pieces (n)	
mend (ed) (v)	يصلح - يعالج	jewellery (n)	
broken (adj)	مكسور	furniture (n)	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sew	يحيك / يخيط	sewed	sewn
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
know	يعرف	knew	known
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
live	يعيش	die	يموت
serious	خطير	safe	آمن

تنبيه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

charity	an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need — جمعية خيرية
cut	an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp — جرح - قطع
infection	a disease in part of your body — عدوى
countryside	the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature — ريف
natural disaster	• a terrible event, such as an earthquake — كارثة طبيعية • something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood or an earthquake

volunteer	• someone who works for no money to help people متطوع • a person who does a job without being paid for it
emergency	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something quickly about حالة طوارئ
lungs	• they take in air and help us to breathe الرئتين • the parts of the body inside the chest which we use to breathe
brain	it tells the parts of our body what to do المخ
heart	it pumps blood around the body قلب
proud	feeling happy about something you have done or are connected with فخور
pump	make water, air, gas, etc. move in a particular direction; the thing you use to do this يضخ - مضخة

II Reading and Listening

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 26



Yasser : I didn't use to know very much about my family history[1]. Then, last week, I did a school project[2] about someone in my family so I did some research[3] and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather[4]. I knew he used to be a doctor but I didn't know he worked for a charity[5]. My great grandfather used to live in the countryside[6] and he worked as a volunteer doctor[7] for the Red Crescent[8] when there was a natural disaster[9] or a health emergency[10]. For example, when there was an earthquake[11], my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary[12]. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud[13] of him.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تاريخ العائلة	(2) مشروع/بحث دراسى	(3) بحث (علمى)	(4) الجد الأكبر	(5) جمعية خيرية	(6) الريف	(7) طبيب متطوع
(8) جمعية الهلال الأحمر	(9) كارثة طبيعية	(10) حالة صحية طارئة	(11) زلزال	(12) مخيف	(13) فخور	

Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 88



We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in[1] 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working[2] in 2001, he used to work in a special[3] hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts[4] for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often died. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children[5] didn't use to live long lives[6], but many ill children can now live healthy lives[7].

Check Vocabulary

(1) وُلد في | (2) توقف عن العمل | (3) خاص | (4) قلوب | (5) الأطفال المرضى | (6) حياة طويلة | (7) حياة صحية

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Ancient Egyptian doctors



We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients[1] because they wrote down[2] their ideas[3] thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptians doctors understood that the heart pumps[4] blood[5] around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air[6] to our lungs![7] They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain[8] does, but they did not know how important it was.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المرضى | (2) يدون | (3) أفكار | (4) يضخ | (5) الدم | (6) هواء | (7) الرئتين | (8) المخ

Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants[9] to help people with burns[10] and to stop infections[11]. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend[12] broken bones[13] and sew[14] cuts[15], but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

Check Vocabulary

(9) نباتات	(10) حروق	(11) عدوى/إصابة	(12) يصلح/يعالج	(13) عظام مكسورة	(14) يخيط	(15) جروح

On Lesson 4 WB page 89



Life in Ancient Egypt[1] was different to today. Poor children[2] didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons[3]. However, they used to leave things inside the house, such as jewellery[4] and furniture[5], to the daughters[6].

Check Vocabulary

(1) مصر القديمة	(2) أطفال فقراء	(3) الأبناء	(4) مجوهرات	(5) الأثاث	(6) البنات

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes — الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
stop	يأتى بعدها اسم ويكون معناها يوقف أو يمنع	– Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. *(SB page 28)*

stop	يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) ويكون معناها يتوقف عن او يقلع عن	– He stopped smoking six years ago.
proud of	فخور بـ ويأتى بعدها اسم او (inf. + ing)	– I feel very proud of my great grandfather. (SB page …) – I'm proud of being a teacher.
proud to	فخور بـ ويأتى بعدها (inf.) مصدر الفعل	– I'm proud to be Egyptian.
Expressions and Prepositions		**تعبيرات وحروف الجر**
works for no money	يعمل بدون مقابل	– A volunteer is someone who works for no money to help people. (SB page …)
do a school project	يقوم ببحث دراسى	– Yasser was doing a school project on someone in his family. (SB page …)
a volunteer for	متطوع لـ	– He was a volunteer for the Red Crescent. (SB page …)
different to	مختلف عن (بالمقارنة بـ)	– Life in Ancient Egypt was different to life today. (WB page …)
pay for	يدفع (مال) لـ	– They don't pay her for her work. She's a volunteer. (WB page …)
cut ...... into	يقطع .... الى	– Cut the meat into small pieces before you cook it. (WB page …)
take air in	يستنشق (هواء)	– Your lungs take air in to help you breathe.
write down	يدون	– Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. (SB page …)

Exercise on Vocabulary

◎ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. An Earthquake is a natural ....
   a. kindness   b. disorder   c. disaster   d. infection
2. You can use this door in a/an .... , such as a fire.
   a. pump   b. mend   c. farms   d. emergency
3. She was a .... for the Red Crescent.
   a. student   b. volunteer   c. brain   d. patient
4. The .... take in air and help us to breathe.
   a. hearts   b. brains   c. stomachs   d. lungs
5. The .... pumps blood around the body.
   a. heart   b. lung   c. brain   d. eye
6. You should clean your hand well to protect yourself from coronavirus ....
   a. emergency   b. infection   c. nature   d. breathe

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

7. SB A .... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a. charity   b. teacher   c. nature   d. patient
8. WB Many ill children can now live healthy ....
   a. dive   b. leaves   c. lift   d. lives
9. WB This football has no .... inside it. I need a pump to fill it.
   a. water   b. light   c. air   d. hair

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. The heart pumps .... around the body.
    a. milk   b. fire   c. blood   d. water
11. The house is burned. There must be a ....
    a. form   b. farm   c. fire   d. fight

12. Milk, cheese and fruit are .... food.
   a. wealthy b. dry c. healthy d. spicy
13. She needs to .... the balloon with air for her little son.
   a. fall b. fill c. fail d. feel
14. He is 69 years now. He .... working 9 years ago.
   a. started b. looked c. joined d. stopped

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. The Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote .... their ideas thousands years ago.
   a. out b. down c. out d. inside
16. The sports coach was pleased .... his winner team.
   a. around b. on c. off d. with
17. Don't pay .... this ticket. It's free.
   a. of b. with c. off d. for

III Language

"used to" for regular past habits and routines

تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية فى الماضى

– You can use **(used to)** to talk about habits or states that were true in the past but are not true now.

تستخدم **(used to)** للتعبير عن عادات أو أشيا ، حقيقية كانت تحدث بانتظام فى زمن الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن.

ex. - When I was young, I used to play in the street.

Formation التكوين

A. Affirmative statement : أ.الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل... إلخ

ex. - My father used to work in a bank, but now he works in an office.
- We used to live in a village, but now we live in the city.

B. Negative statement : ب.الجملة الخبرية المنفية :

- للنفي نستخدم (didn't use to) :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ....

ex. - I didn't use to like salad when I was young, but I love it now.

C. Interrogative : ج.صيغة الاستفهام :

A. Yes / No questions : أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Did + Subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

ex. - Did your mother use to read to you when you were young ?

- وللإجابة المختصرة :

- No, she didn't. - Yes, she did.

B. Wh - questions : ب. السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

ex. - Where did you use to live before you moved to this city ?
- We used to live in a village.

2000



Now



They used to have a small car.

They didn't use to have a big car.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB He used to .... in the countryside.
   a. lived b. live c. living d. lives
2. WB Yasser's grandmother used .... work in a hospital.
   a. too b. for c. of d. to
3. SB Did he .... to walk to school ?
   a. use b. to use c. used d. used to
4. SB They used .... a small car.
   a. to having b. to have c. have d. having
5. SB Yasser's uncle .... use to live in Tunisia.
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. am d. wasn't
6. SB Did you use to have any different hobbies ? No, ...
   a. I did b. I don't c. I do d. I didn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. I .... to live in a small flat when I was a child.
   a. am using b. was using c. use d. used
8. What games .... you use to play at the nursery الحضانة ?
   a. done b. do c. did d. does
9. She used to .... fat but now she's thin.
   a. was b. is c. being d. be
10. No, I .... use to write letters to my friends.
    a. am not b. didn't c. was d. don't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Yasser's grandfather didn't used to know how to drive. (....................)
2. WB What do you use to learn at primary school ? (....................)
3. WB Dr Magdy used for help to give people new hearts. (....................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. I used to swim a lot when I am younger. (....................)
5. No, I didn't used to eat fish. (....................)
6. That building used to being a cinema. (....................)
7. Ayman used to had a sports car. (....................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. He used to .... (sings) nice songs.
2. We didn't .... (used to) swim.
3. Did he .... (used) to ride bikes ?
4. I .... (not used) to smoke.
5. My grandpa used to .... (lived) in a village.

IV Speaking Corner

Discussion about your family history : مناقشة عن تاريخ العائلة الخاصة بك

Questions	Answers
1. Do you know much about your family history ? What things do you know ? هل تعرف الكثير عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ ما الأشياء التى تعرفها ؟	- Yes, I know a lot. I know about my great-grandfather and great-grandmother. نعم أعرف الكثير. أعرف عن جدى الأكبر وجدتى الكبرى.
2. Would you like to learn more about your family history ? Why ? هل تود أن تعرف أكثر عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ لماذا ؟	- Yes, I'd like this because I want to learn about their life and their habits. نعم أود لأنى اريد أن اعرف عن حياتهم وعاداتهم
3. Which person in your family do you talk about ? أى شخص فى عائلتك تتحدث عنه ؟	- I talk about my great-grandfather. أتحدث عن جدى الأكبر.
4. Where did your great-grandfather use to live ? اين اعتاد أن يعيش جدك الأكبر ؟	- He used to live in the country. اعتاد أن يعيش فى الريف.
5. What did your great-grandfather use to do ? ماذا اعتاد جدك الأكبر أن يفعل ؟	- He used to be a volunteer for the Red Crescent. اعتاد أن يكون متطوعًا فى جمعية الهلال الأحمر. - He used to help when there is a natural disaster or a health emergency. اعتاد أن يساعد عندما يكون هناك كارثة طبيعية أو حالة طوارئ صحية.

Asking and answering questions about Ancient Egyptian doctors :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن أطباء مصر القديمة

Questions	Answers
1. How did we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors ? كيف عرفنا عن أطباء مصر القديمة ؟	- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. كان أطباء مصر القديمة يدونون أفكارهم منذ آلاف السنين.
2. What did they use to know about the heart ? ماذا اعتادوا أن يعرفوا عن القلب ؟	- They understood everything about how the heart works. فهموا كل شئ عن كيفية عمل / وظيفة القلب.
3. What did they use to help patients ? ماذا استخدموا لمساعدة المرضى ؟	- They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. استخدموا النباتات لمساعدة ذوى الحروق ومنع العدوى.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

«What Yasser's family used to do and didn't use to do»

1. Yasser's grandmother used to work in a hospital.

١. اعتادت جدة ياسر أن تعمل فى مستشفى.

2. Before he got married, Yasser's dad didn't use to live in Cairo.

٢. لم يعتاد والد ياسر أن يعيش فى القاهرة قبل زواجه.

3. Yasser's uncle used to live in Tunisia.

٣. إعتاد عم ياسر المعيشة فى تونس.

4. When she was a child, Yasser's mum used to play the piano every day.

٤. إعتادت والدة ياسر العزف على البيانو يوميًا عندما كانت طفلة.

General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Ancient Egyptian .... helped people with burns.
   a. scientists b. teachers c. rulers d. doctors
2. What did they use to help people with burns ?
   a. Seeds b. Medicines c. Plants d. Mud
3. Did they know how to stop infections ?
   a. Yes b. Not often c. No d. Sometimes
4. We still use some of these .... today like them.
   a. tools b. plants c. doctors d. pumps

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf : Who is your hero, Ayman ?
Ayman : (1) ....
Ashraf : What was your great-grandfather's job ?
Ayman : (2) ....
Ashraf : Great! (3) .... ?
Ayman : He worked in a big hospital in Cairo.
Ashraf : (4) .... ?
Ayman : No, he wasn't a surgeon. He was a dentist.
Ashraf : (5) .... ?
Ayman : He used to be a volunteer for the Red Crescent.
Ashraf : Are you proud of him ?
Ayman : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Yasser was .... a school project when I met him.
   a. looking b. doing c. taking d. spending
2. SB An emergency is something .... or dangerous that you need to do something about.
   a. safe b. slow c. silly d. serious
3. SB We know about Ancient Egyptian doctors because they wrote down their ....
   a. stories b. games c. ideas d. addresses

4. Lungs take in air and help us to ....
   a. release   b. relax   c. please   d. breathe
5. Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye ....
   a. infect   b. infection   c. plant   d. light
6. Who did you .... to play with at break ?
   a. used   b. using   c. used to   d. use
7. I used to .... kites.
   a. fly   b. flew   c. flying   d. flies
8. WB I always give money to a/an .... that helps poor children.
   a. school   b. charity   c. library   d. bank
9. .... Ali use to work as a surgeon before 2010 ?
   a. Does   b. Was   c. Did   d. Had
10. The opposite of rich is ....
   a. sad   b. sick   c. well   d. poor

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Mum used <u>of</u> make our breakfast early. (..........)
2. SB I used to play basketball, but I <u>didn't</u> now. (..........)
3. What did she <u>used</u> to do at the weekend ? (..........)
4. WB <u>Do</u> all children use to go to school ? (..........)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets :

1. What .... (you used) to do ?
2. When I was 10, I used to .... (was) funny.
3. Soha .... (uses) to speak two languages.
4. I .... (not used) to run fast.
5. He .... (you used to) listen to music ?

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

سجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Our body"

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scared (adj)	خائف - مرعوب	organisation (n)	
agree (d) (v)	يوافق	championship (n)	
rubbish collectors (n)	جامعي القمامة	street cleaners	الشوارع
heroic (adj)	بطولي - نبيل	manager (n)	
nursing (n)	(مهنة) تمريض		

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

need (ed) (v)	يحتاج	society (n)	
painting (n)	لوحة (مرسومة)	collect (ed) (v)	
discussion (n)	مناقشة	statue (n)	
internet (n)	الانترنت	explain (ed) (v)	يفسر

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

continue (d) (v)	يستمر	poster (n)	
Faculty of Nursing (n)	كلية التمريض	England (n)	إنجلترا
education (n)	التعليم	confuse (d) (v)	يربك
dictionary (n)	قاموس	captain (n)	كابتن الفريق
main idea (n)	الفكرة الرئيسة	include (d) (v)	يتضمن
Athens (n)	مدينة أثينا (عاصمة اليونان)	introduce (d) (v)	
The parthenon (n)	معبد البارثينون	The Island of Crete	كريت
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	writer (n)	
island (n)	جزيرة	firefighter (n)	الإطفاء

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean	يقصد - يعني	meant	meant
keep	يحافظ - يحفظ	kept	kept
teach	يعلم - يدرس	taught	taught
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
true	حقيقي	false	مزيف / غير حقيقي
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
modern	حديث - عصري	ancient	عتيق / قديم جدًا
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

heroic	very brave or great	بطولي / نبيل
manager	a person whose job is to organise people in a company or business	مدير
scared	frightened or afraid that something bad could happen	خائف

II Listening and Reading

Listening

- **on Lesson 5 SB page 29**

Mona : What is a hero[1], Huda ?

Huda : I think a hero is someone who is very brave[2].

Mona : What do you mean ?

Huda : I mean a hero isn't scared[3] of anything.



Check Vocabulary

(1) بطل | (2) شجاع | (3) خائف

Mona : I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries their best.

Huda : I'm not sure what you mean.

Mona : In other words[4], they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda : It's also about putting other people first.

Mona : Sorry, I don't understand[5].

Huda : I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona : Yes, I agree!

Check Vocabulary

(4) بمعنى آخر / من ناحية أخرى | (5) يفهم

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 29



A : I think rubbish collectors[1] can be heroes.

B : What do you mean[2] ?

A : I mean, we need rubbish collectors.

B : Sorry, I don't understand.

A : I mean, they do something very useful[3].
They collect rubbish from our homes.
The city would be terrible[4] without[5] them!

B : That's true[6]. What about street cleaners[7] ?

A : I'm not sure what you mean.

B : I mean, street cleaners are also important because they help to keep our cities clean.

A : Yes, that's true!

Check Vocabulary

(1) جامعي القمامة | (2) يعني / يقصد | (3) مفيد | (4) فظيع / رهيب | (5) بدون | (6) هذا صحيح | (7) منظفي الشوارع

• on Lesson 5 WB page 90

Soha All art[1] is important.
Sara What do you mean ?
Soha We all need[2] art.
Sara : I'm not sure what you mean.
Soha : In other words, art can teach[3] us things.
Sara Sorry, I don't understand.
Soha : I mean, when we see a painting[4] or statue[5], we can learn[6] things about life.



Check Vocabulary

(1) الرسم / الفن	(2) يحتاج	(3) يعلم / يدرس	(4) لوحة مرسومة	(5) تمثال	(6) يتعلم

• on Lesson 5 WB page 90



Karim I think that all teachers are heroes.
Tarek : What do you mean ?
Karim : I mean, without teachers, we would not learn anything.
Tarek : There's the internet.
Karim : Sorry, I don't understand. I'm not sure what you mean.
Tarek : In other words, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.
Karim I don't agree. We will always need teachers.

Videoscript Lesson 5 SB page 29 •

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a firefighter[1] is a great job because they save people's lives[2]. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

Check Vocabulary

(1) رجل مطافئ	(2) ينقذ حياة الأشخاص

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes[3]!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barsoum.

He was born in Asyut in 1941.

Today, he is one of the most important kidney[4] doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes.

They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do ? Will you be a hero ?

Check Vocabulary

(3) أبطال | (4) كلية

on Lesson 6 SB page 30

My heroic[1] mother



1. Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult[2].She studied to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing[3] in Ain Shams University[4] and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued[5] to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.
2. Now, she works in a big hospital in Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work, because most of them got better. She is also a nursing manager[6] and she helps to teach younger nurses.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بطولى | (2) صعب | (3) كلية التمريض | (4) جامعة | (5) يستمر | (6) مديرة تمريض

3. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education[7] is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

Check Vocabulary

(7) تعليم

on Lesson 6 WB page 91

Hi!



My name's Adam and I want to write about a person[1] I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed.

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for[2] her studies, but that is not the reason[3] I am proud of her ! In 2020, there was a health emergency[4] and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital.

She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!

Check Vocabulary

(1) شخص	(2) يدفع مالا لـ	(3) سبب / مبرر	(4) حالة طوارئ صحية

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

الملاحظات اللغوية

Language Notes

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
contain	يحتوى على (شئ داخل شئ)	- The museum contains a number of old statues.
include	يتضمن / يشمل (جزء من كل)	- The English exam includes writing, listening and reading skills.
reason (for)	تستخدم بمعنى سبب لـ / مبرر لـ (معنوى) ويأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) / (n)	- What's the reason for coming late ?
cause (of)	تستخدم بمعنى سبب مباشر (مادى) ويأتى بعدها (inf. + ing) / (n)	- What's the cause of the fire ?

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف الجر

have a class discussion	يقوم بعمل مناقشة صفية / دراسية	- Student are having a class discussion about pollution.
scared of	خائف من	- I mean a hero isn't scared of anything. (SB page 2…)
put other people first	يضع الآخرين فى اعتباره أولاً	- Heroes put other people first. (SB page 2…)
try their best	يبذل قصارى جهده	- I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries their best. (SB page 2…)
do something very useful	يقوم بشئ مفيد جدًا	- Rubbish collectors do something very useful. (SB page …)

remember	يتذكر أن يفعل شيئاً ويتبعها (to + inf.) يتذكر أنه فعل شيئاً ويتبعها (inf. + ing)	- Remember to close the back door of your home. - She remembered locking the door (this means she locked the door).

Confusing words

- لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات الآتية لها نفس النطق :

to (prep.)
بمعنى الى / لكى (حرف جر)
(to) يتبعها (inf.) أو مكان

ex.: - She also used to work to help pay for her studies. *(WB page 91)*
- I went to the zoo last week.

two (number)
رقم اثنين (عدد)

ex.: - I bought two books yesterday. *(WB page 91)*

too (adv)
بمعنى أيضًا وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة

ex.: - Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, too. *(WB page 91)*

---

their (adj)
صفة ملكية (جمع) ويأتى بعدها اسم بمعنى (ملكهم)

ex.: - My brothers have the same bags. Their bags are blue.

there (adv)
ظرف مكان بمعنى هناك

ex.: - We went to my cousin's house, but nobody was there. *(WB page 91)*

---

it's = it is
هذا / هذه تكون (لغير العاقل)

ex.: - This is my primary school. It's a nice school.

its (adj)
صفة ملكية لغير العاقل ويأتى بعدها اسم (ملكه - ملكها)

ex.: - Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is its most famous building. *(WB page 91)*

know (v) (WB page …)
ex.: - I didn't think I know the answer to this question.
يستخدم للتعبير عن النفى أو عدم الموافقة

no
ex.: - No, I didn't use to go to school by bus.

than (prep) تستخدم فى المقارنة أو التفضيل (حرف جر)
ex.: - Are you taller than your brother ? (WB page …)

then (adv) يستخدم كظرف للتعبير عن توالى الأحداث بمعنى (ثم)
ex.: - My father got a job in Cairo. My parents then live in a small flat.
(WB page …)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A doctor's work is really ....
   a. heroic b. dirty c. ugly d. easy
2. .... help us to keep our city clean.
   a. Firefighters b. Vets
   c. Computer programmers d. Street cleaners
3. You can go to the .... of our factory and tell him your problem.
   a. manager b. cleaner c. hero d. captain
4. Nour El Sherbini won the World Squash .... in 2020.
   a. Painting b. Race c. Championship d. Test
5. The streets would be terrible without ....
   a. rubbish collectors b. trainers
   c. farmers d. managers
6. Heroes are never ....
   a. scared b. hungry c. dangerous d. busy

7. My sister will join the Faculty of .... She wants to be a nurse.
   a. Medicine   b. Engineering   c. Nursing   d. Art

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. SB She always tells me that .... is very important.
   a. infection   b. education   c. pollution   d. smoking
9. SB Did he use to be the .... of the football team ?
   a. scientist   b. writer   c. captain   d. cleaner
10. SB The topic should .... the main idea of the paragraph.
   a. clean   b. end   c. hide   d. include
11. WB My family first visited the .... of Crete ten years ago.
   a. Bank   b. School   c. Building   d. Island

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

12. After having a/an ...., he agreed to give me extra money.
   a. education   b. discussion   c. reason   d. expression
13. Some words .... me like "too" and "to" when I hear them.
   a. learn   b. keep   c. mean   d. confuse
14. Tamer .... me to his parents during his birthday party.
   a. agreed   b. introduced   c. managed   d. kept
15. A .... is someone whose job is to put out يطفئ fires.
   a. street cleaner   b. rubbish collector
   c. firefighter   d. customer

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. I don't understand, so can you tell me the question in .... words?
   a. difficult   b. great   c. another   d. other
17. Teachers try their .... to make us good persons.
   a. less   b. mess   c. best   d. list
18. Remember to .... hard for the exam.
   a. studies   b. study   c. studying   d. studied
19. Please, give me any .... for making such a mistake.
   a. reason   b. cause   c. invention   d. present

III Speaking Corner

Checking your understanding
تحقق من استيعابك لحديث ما

هناك عبارات تستخدم للتأكيد على الفهم والإدراك أثناء المحادثة

- What do you mean ? — ماذا تعنى / ماذا تقصد ؟
- I mean .... — أنا أقصد ...
- I'm not sure what you mean. — أنا لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.
- In other words, ... — بمعنى آخر ...
- Sorry, I don't understand. — آسف، أنا لا أفهم ذلك.

IV Writing

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

- Start a new paragraph for each main idea. ابدأ فقرة جديدة لكل فكرة أساسية.
- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence that introduces the main idea.
  الجملة الأولى من الفقرة الإنشائية هى الجملة الافتتاحية التى تقدم الفكرة الأساسية.

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

«Your hero» مثلك الأعلى / بطلك المفضل

1. My hero is my mother. She is an important nurse but I know that her life used to be difficult.

١. مثلى الأعلى هى والدتى، فهى تعمل كممرضة ذات شأن ولكنى أعلم أن حياتها اعتادت أن تكون شاقة.

2. She studied hard to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing in Ain Shams University.

٢. ذاكرت والدتى بجد (فى كلية التمريض فى جامعة عين شمس) لتصبح ممرضة.

3. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult but heroic work.

٣. فى عام ٢٠٢٠ أصيب كثير من الأشخاص بمرض وكانت والدتى تعمل كل يوم لعدة أسابيع. كان عملاً صعبًا ولكنه كان بطوليًا (نبيلًا).

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mohamed is a ....
   a. doctor b. scientist c. nurse d. surgeon
2. He works in a big ....
   a. clinic b. hospital c. charity d. lab
3. When did many people become ill ? - In ....
   a. 2010 b. 2006 c. 2011 d. 2020
4. Did he help ill people a lot ? ....
   a. Yes, he did b. No, he will c. Not really d. No, he didn't

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Verina : Who do you think can be a hero ?
Hala : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.
Verina : (1) .... ?
Hala : I mean we need rubbish collectors.
Verina : Sorry, I don't understand.
Hala : (2) .... , they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them.
Verina : (3) .... I think you're right (4) .... ?
Hala : I think street cleaners are also important.
Verina : (5) .... ?
Hala : Because they help to keep our cities clean.
Verina : Then, What should we do for them ?
Hala : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There was a .... emergency and many people were in hospitals.
   a. wealth b. health c. clues d. expressions
2. WB Are you taller .... your brother ?
   a. them b. then c. than d. their

3. I dream of visiting Hawaii ....
   a. Tower   b. Ship   c. Island   d. Building
4. Did Ali .... to the shops yesterday ?
   a. went   b. goes   c. gone   d. go
5. My grandfather .... football when he was young.
   a. used to playing   b. used to play   c. uses to play   d. used playing
6. Teachers, doctors, nurses and other jobs are useful for our ....
   a. society   b. club   c. gallery   d. museum
7. Tarek .... better after two weeks in a hospital.
   a. knew   b. did   c. got   d. read
8. I think .... collectors can be heroes.
   a. money   b. games   c. rubbish   d. food
9. Maha did .... work. I'm so proud of her.
   a. stupid   b. heroic   c. far   d. rich
10. Last week, there was a big fire, but the brave .... stopped it.
   a. police officer   b. nurses   c. firefighter   d. doctors

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Did you see the film next week ? (............)
2. She win the gold medal in 2019. (............)
3. He used to visited Cairo when he was eight. (............)
4. I used for play chess. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"Rubbish collectors"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى



If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ...... فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على

1 Learn important vocabulary تعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ competition
- ☐ patron
- ☐ female
- ☐ junior
- ☐ volunteer
- ☐ pump
- ☐ senior
- ☐ surgeon
- ☐ sports coach
- ☐ emergency
- ☐ proud
- ☐ nursing manager

2 Read and write sentences using the past simple and used to :

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن الماضى البسيط و(used to)

- ☐ Last year, I went to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.
- ☐ My uncle used to be a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
- ☐ Dina didn't use to give money to a charity, but now she does.

3 Checking your understand :

التحقق من استيعابك لحديث ما

- ☐ **A :** I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.
- ☐ **B :** What do you mean ?
- ☐ **A :** I mean, we need rubbish collectors.
- ☐ **B :** Sorry, I don't understand.
- ☐ **A :** In other words, they do something very useful. They collect rubbish from our homes. The city would be terrible without them!
- ☐ **B :** That's true. What about street cleaners?
- ☐ **A :** I'm not sure what you mean.
- ☐ **B :** I mean, street cleaners are also important because they help to keep our cities clean.

لمزيد من التدريبات * جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

REVIEW on unit 3

SB page 31 WB page

1. Vocabulary

surgeon	طبيب جراح	proud	فخور
patron	راعٍ / كفيل	volunteer	متطوع
sports coach	مدرب رياضي	brain	مخ
hero	بطل	heart	قلب
heroic	بطولي	lungs	رئتين
senior	الأكبر سناً	blood	دم
junior	ناشئ - حديث السن	pump	يضخ / مضخة
competition	مسابقة	infection	عدوى
countryside	الريف	burns	حروق
emergency	حالة طوارئ	cuts	جروح
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	nursing manager	مدير تمريض

2. Language

The past simple tense is used : يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط

1. To talk about actions or situations in the past :

١. للتحدث عن أحداث أو مواقف في الماضي :

- My grandfather died 3 years ago.
- I visited Alexandria last week.

2. To express a past habit : ٢. للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي :

ex.: When I was a child, we lived in Alexandria.

- يلاحظ أن الماضي البسيط يأتي مع :

subject فاعل + used to + inf. اعتاد على

ex.: When I was a child, we used to live in Alexandria.

- وللنفي نستخدم :

subject فاعل + didn't use to + inf.

ex.: When I was young, I didn't use to play tennis.

3. Speaking

Checking your understanding

هناك عبارات تستخدم للتأكيد على الفهم والإدراك أثناء المحادثة

• What do you mean ?	ماذا تعني / ماذا تقصد ؟
• I mean	أنا أقصد ...
• I'm not sure what you mean.	أنا لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.
• In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر ، ...
• Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، أنا لا أفهم ذلك.

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات / رسائل بريد إلكتروني هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة

Model email

"Someone you're proud of"

From : adam2020@gmail.com

To : yasser@gmail.com

Subject : Someone I am proud of

Hi Yasser,

I want to write to you about a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed. When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the reason I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me.

Yours,

Adam

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ Modern heroes / Someone you're proud of / Ancient Egyptian doctors / Dr Magdy Yacoub

مجموعة أسئلة للاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

Brainstorming

- What makes a hero ?
- Who is your favourite hero ?
- Why are you proud of him/her ?

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Vocabulary

- competition	- scared
- senior	- work hard
- junior	- help people
- win	- do useful things
- heroic work	- do difficult things

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

Expressions & Structures

- She/He used to do ....
- He/She is a hero because ....
- She/He always tells me that ....
- When he/she was little, ...

Paragraph / Email كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد الكترونى

➲ Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"Modern heroes"

....
....
....
....
....

Modern heroes are proud of ... project wo...

Objectives
1. To speak about ...
2. To speak abou...

Get started
1. Do you know ...
2. Why are you ...

Project
Write a short ... are proud of ... Support you...
OR Make a ...

Your P...

Shee...
* https...
* The ir...
* Stude...

Modern heroes and a person you are proud of

project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن أبطال معاصرون وشخصية أنت فخور بها



Objectives الأهداف

1. To speak about modern heroes in your country.
أن تتحدث عن أبطال معاصرون فى بلدك.
2. To speak about a person you are proud of.
أن تتحدث عن شخصية أنت فخور بها.

Get started ابتدأ

1. Do you know any heroes in Egypt ? — ١. هل تعرف أى أبطال فى مصر ؟
2. Why are you proud of them ? — ٢. لماذا أنت فخور بهم ؟

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on someone you are proud of.
اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن شخصية تكون فخور بها.
Support your paragraph with pictures.
ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

OR Make a poster about "Modern heroes" in your country.
أو صمم ملصقًا عن الأبطال المعاصرون فى بلدك.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

- https ://www.ekb.eg — بنك المعرفة المصرى
- The internet — الانترنت
- Student's books — الكتب المدرسية

Test yourself unit 3

نوتة
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويره

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What did Mrs Karima use to do when she was young ? - ....
   a. To study very hard b. To play tennis
   c. To go shopping d. To drive a car
2. What's Mrs Karima's job ? - ....
   a. A teacher b. A nurse c. A doctor d. An engineer
3. Where did she work ? ....
   a. In a hospital b. In a museum c. In a shop d. At home
4. Why did she use to work ? ....
   a. To pay for her parents b. To pay for her studies
   c. To pay for her brother d. To pay for her sister

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda : What's your grandfather's job ?
Samya : (1) ....
Hoda : (2) .... ?
Samya : He works in a charity.
Hoda : What does he do there ?
Samya : He helps poor people.
Hoda : (3) .... ?
Samya : (4) .... He works for no money.
Hoda : Do you mean that he is a volunteer ?
Samya : (5) .... I'm very proud of him.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before **he** stopped working in 2001, he worked in a **special** hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people

with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children ?

....

2. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places ?

....

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "***he***" refers to ....
   a. Magdy Yacoub　　b. Magdy's father
   c. Magdy's grandfather　　d. Magdy's great grandfather
5. The underlined word "**special**" means ....
   a. usual　　b. very big　　c. not usual　　d. very old
6. The birthplace of Dr Magdy is ....
   a. Aswan　　b. Cairo　　c. London　　d. Bilbeis

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We are .... of being Egyptians.
   a. pride　　b. proud　　c. sad　　d. tired
2. .... such as gold and silver is very expensive.
   a. Emergency　　b. Money　　c. Charity　　d. Jewellery
3. Kareem is a .... in this hospital. He works for no money.
   a. volunteer　　b. voluntary　　c. pioneer　　d. charity
4. SB Do you know the .... between "know" and "no" ?
   a. number　　b. difference　　c. idea　　d. education
5. SB Nour El Sherbini won the World Squash .... in 2020.
   a. Championship　　b. State
   c. Coach　　d. Team
6. A : Do you know what I .... ?

B : I'm sorry, I don't understand.

a. agree b. mine c. main d. mean

7. Ali didn't .... to swim in the sea.

a. using b. use c. used d. uses

8. The heart .... blood around the body.

a. pumps b. breathes c. infects d. cuts

9. Did he use to .... a car ?

a. drive b. driving c. drove d. driven

10. WB Where .... you use to live when you were young ?

a. do b. did c. are d. were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Sameera Moussa .... (is) born is 1917.
2. Magdy Yacoub .... (helps) people with heart problems for many years.
3. Where .... (do) your parents live when they were young ?
4. When you were ten, did you .... (used) to live in a different house?

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I go to primary school for six years. (..................)
2. WB Why did Mrs Karima Mohammed used to study hard ? (..................)
3. Youssef didn't found the lost book. (..................)
4. Hala buys a nice bag last week. (..................)

E. Writing

7 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Dr Magdy Yacoub"

....

....

....

....

....

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94



Listening

- on lesson 1 SB page 32



Dalia : Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history[1]. Can I ask you some questions ?

Dad : Of course, what do you want to know ?

Dalia : Where did you live when you were a child ? Was it in Luxor ?

Dad : No, I moved to Luxor when I was a teenager. When I was a child, I used to live in a village[2] outside the city.

Dalia : Oh, I see. Who did you live with ?

Dad : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents[3]. We used to live in my grandparents' house.

Dalia : What time did you usually get up ?

Dad : Very early ! On a school day, I got up at about 4.30 am !

Dalia : Really ? Why did you get up so early ?

Dad : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

Dalia : How did you travel to school ?

Dad : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

Dalia : What subjects did and didn't you like at school ?

Dad : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تاريخ العائلة	(2) قرية	(3) أجداد

Review

A

Reading

- on lesson 2 SB page 33

Life in Antarctica[1]



Why did you come to work in Antarctica ?

a I used to work as a scientist at a university. Then I saw a job advertisement[2] for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and I thought it looked interesting.

What is daily life like in Antarctica ?

b Some things are the same as home ! We usually get up at about 7 am. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and finish at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

What is different about life in Antarctica ?

c At the moment it is winter[3] so it is dark[4] all day and night ! The weather is very cold and windy[5]. Only 20 people are working here now. I miss[6] my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience[7] !

Check Vocabulary

(1) القارة القطبية الجنوبية	(2) إعلان عن وظيفة	(3) فصل الشتاء	(4) مظلم	(5) عاصف	(6) يفتقد	(7) تجربة رائعة

- on lesson 2 SB page 33

Hi !

How are you ? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play ? What did your favourite toy use to be ? What did you use to eat ? I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon !

Max

Listening

- Lesson 1 WB page 93

My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through[1] an attractive park[2] on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large lake[3]. I am in the foreground[4], with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle[5] and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the background[6]. Azza has a dark blue[7] jumper[8] and a striped[9] school bag.



Check Vocabulary

(1) يمشى خلال	(2) منتزه رائع	(3) بحيرة	(4) المقدمة	(5) المنتصف / الوسط
(6) الخلفية	(7) أزرق داكن	(8) بلوفر	(9) مقلم/مخطط	

احرص على اقتناء



★ كتاب المعاصر فى المراجعة النهائية ★

للصف الثانى الاعدادى

طبقًا لأخر ما تقرر من مواصفات الورقة

الامتحانية للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٠-٢٠٢١

«أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق»



GENERAL REVISION

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات (١، ٢ و ٣)

مراجعة عامة على Unit 1 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
daily routine	الروتين اليومى
interview	يحاور - حوار
text friends	يرسل رسائل لأصدقائه على هواتفهم
feed	يطعم
attractive	جذاب
terrible	رهيب / فظيع
railway line	خط سكة حديد
prison	سجن
poor	فقير
armchair	كرسى بمسند
basin	حوض (للاغتسال)
bookshelf	رف الكتب
carpet	سجادة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
curtains	ستائر
lamp	لمبة / أباجورة
mirror	مرآة
sofa	كنبة
wardrobe	دولاب ملابس

Language

1- Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- always دائمًا - sometimes أحيانًا - often غالبًا
- never أبدًا - usually عادة

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما :

ex.: - She always studies hard for her final exams.

- He usually drives an old car.

2- The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

• «يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من»

Affirmative :

I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + المصدر inf

He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب + المصدر inf + (s/es/ies)

Negative :

فاعل + doesn't / don't + inf

Interrogative :

Do / Does + فاعل + مصدر الفعل inf ...?

Does Mariam listen to music on the bus ?

Do her parents make dinner ?

Speaking

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى :

1. What time do you get up ?
   - I get up at ....
2. How often do you play tennis ?
   - I usually play tennis.
3. Who do you usually talk to at break ?
   - I usually talk to my friends at break.

Mini-Test on Unit 1

5. Yasser has a flat on the tenth floor in that big

Mini-Test on Unit 1

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Sameer : Hi! Khaled (1) .... ?
Khaled : Hi Sameer! I live with my parents and my brothers.
Sameer : What's your father's job ?
Khaled : (2) ....
Sameer : (3) .... ?
Khaled : In a hospital near our house.
Sameer : (4) .... ?
Khaled : Yes, I want to be a doctor like him.
Sameer : What do you do for this goal ?
Khaled : (5) ....
Sameer : Do you like studying with a friend ?
Khaled : (6) ....

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I usually .... to school by bus.
   a. jump b. get c. ride d. arrive
2. SB P.3 Does Mariam .... to music on the bus ?
   a. learn b. practise c. play d. listen
3. The .... is the same things you do every day.
   a. way b. event c. routine d. action
4. "Start" is the same meaning as ....
   a. begin b. continue c. get d. spend
5. Yasser has a flat on the tenth floor in that big ....
   a. apartment b. block c. park d. home
6. WB I saw Ahmed's father on his .... to work this morning.
   a. away b. way c. path d. road
7. Can you .... my father for me because I lost my phone ?
   a. text b. write c. send d. talk
8. WB Samy often .... TV with his cousins.
   a. watch b. watched c. watching d. watches
9. WB .... is older, you or your brother ?
   a. Who b. Whom c. What d. Whose
10. I usually talk .... my friends during the break.
   a. on b. for c. to d. by

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Where do you get up in the mornings ? (........)
2. My penfriend Ali don't like to drink tea. (........)
3. SB Ali haven't got any pens. (........)
4. She never is late for school. (........)

مراجعة عامة على Unit 2 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
call-centre worker	موظف مركز اتصالات
computer engineer	مهندس حاسبات
police officer	ضابط شرطة
street-food seller	بائع أطعمة متجول
food stall	كشك طعام
ward	عنبر
calligraphy	فن الخط
sign language	لغة الإشارة
sewing	خياطة
foreground	الأمام
background	الخلفية
teenager	مراهق
grateful	شاكر - ممتن
friendly	ودود
normal	عادى / طبيعى
Congratulations	تهانينا
empathy	تعاطف
wedding	زفاف

Language

1. Use the Present Simple and the Present Continuous

1. The Present Simple :

زمن المضارع البسيط :

I / They / We / You فاعل جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات

ex.: - I get up at 7 o'clock.

He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب + التصريف الأول للفعل + (s / es / ies)

• يستخدم للتعبير عن الروتين اليومى والعادات

ex.: - He usually goes to school at 8 o'clock.

2. The Present Continuous :

زمن المضارع المستمر :

I / He - She - It / We - You - They + am / is / are + inf. المصدر + ing

• يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يقع الآن

ex.: - He is working in a laboratory now.
- They are listening to music at the moment.

2. Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال

• الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة المنتظمة.

badly	بطريقة سيئة	slowly	ببطء
quietly	بهدوء	happily	بسعادة
loudly	بصوت عال / مرتفع	sadly	بحزن
quickly	بسرعة	softly	بهدوء

• هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها "ly -" وتحفظ كما هى مثل

good ⟶ well

• للسؤال عن كيفية فعل شئ ما فى زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام How
How does your sister speak?
She speaks quietly.

Speaking

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

A : Mr Youssef is ill.

B : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets well soon.

A : Ali got the full marks in maths.

B : Congratulations ! That's great news.

Mini-Test on Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

4. If you speak English, you can .... with

Mini-Test on Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Amr : Could I ask you some questions about your job ?
Ali : (1) ....
Amr : Thank you. (2) .... ?
Ali : I'm a doctor.
Amr : (3) .... ?
Ali : I work in a hospital for children.
Amr : Do you like your job ?
Ali : (4) .... , but I feel tired.
Amr : (5) .... ?
Ali : Because I work for long hours.
Amr : What do you like to do in the future ?
Ali : (6) ....

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fady isn't .... a jacket today because it is very hot.
   a. wearing b. wears c. wear d. worn
2. He .... the maths problem. It is difficult.
   a. don't understand b. not understanding
   c. doesn't understand d. understood
3. The children are singing .... in the playground.
   a. loud b. loudly c. loudness d. as loud
4. If you speak English, you can .... with people in other countries.
   a. contact b. connect
   c. communicate d. cooperate
5. Last week, I contacted a computer engineer to .... my computer.
   a. deliver b. repair c. repay d. pay
6. A .... is a boy or a girl aged 13 - 19.
   a. teenager b. toddler c. baby d. kid
7. When you feel happy about the good things in your life, you are ....
   a. wonderful b. useful
   c. hateful d. grateful
8. Fatma is deaf. She can use .... language.
   a. signal b. sign c. happy d. sad
9. This is a photo of my parent's .... They were wonderful.
   a. wedding b. weeding c. bleeding d. leading
10. The nurse works on the .... for children.
   a. hard b. ward c. word d. bed

مراجعة عامة على Unit 3 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

scientist	عالم
surgeon	طبيب جراح
patron (n)	راعٍ/كفيل
sports coach	مدرب رياضى
junior	ناشئ / حديث السن
senior	الأكبر سناً
competition	مسابقة
charity	جمعية خيرية
countryside	الريف
emergency	طوارئ
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
proud	فخور
volunteer	متطوع
brain	مخ
heart	قلب
lungs	رئتين
burns	حروق
cuts	جروح
infection	عدوى / إصابة
infect	يعدى / يصيب
nursing manager	مدير تمريض

Language

1. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject التصريف الثانى للفعل + الفاعل

- I went out for a walk yesterday.

Negative النفى

Subj. فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I didn't go out for a walk yesterday.

Usage الإستخدام

- التحدث عن حدث وقع وانتهى فى الماضى.

- I visited my cousin last week.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday, last..., .. ago, once upon a time, one day .... .

Interrogative صيغة الإستفهام

Did + subj. + inf. ... ?

- Did you study your lessons ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

اداة استفهام + did + subj. + inf. ... ?

- Where did you spend your last summer holiday ?
I spent it in Alexandria.

2. Used to + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت فى الماضى وانتهت الآن

He used to play tennis but now he doesn't.

Speaking

Checking your understanding
التحقق من استيعابك

Soha : All art is important.
Sara : What do you mean ?
Soha : We all need art.
Sara : I'm not sure what you mean.
Soha : In other words, art can teach us things.
Sara : Sorry, I don't understand.
Soha : I mean, when we see a painting or a statue, we can learn things about life.

Mini-Test on Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We are .... of being Egyptians.
d. pure

8. The heart .... blood around the body.
a. pumps b. breathes c. infects d. cuts

9. Did he .... drive a car ?
d. uses to

Mini-Test on Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We are .... of being Egyptians.
   a. pride b. proud c. bird d. pure
2. .... such as gold and silver is very expensive.
   a. Method b. Money c. Charity d. Jewellery
3. Kareem is a .... in this hospital. He works for no money.
   a. volunteer b. voluntary
   c. pioneer d. charity
4. .... are our body parts which are filled with air when we breathe.
   a. Hearts b. Lungs c. Organs d. Skeletons
5. SB Nour El Sherbini won the World Squash .... in 2020.
   a. Championship b. States
   c. Coach d. Team
6. **A :** Do you know what I .... ?
   B : I'm sorry, I don't understand.
   a. agree b. mine c. main d. mean
7. Ali didn't .... swim in the sea.
   a. use b. use to c. used to d. uses to
8. The heart .... blood around the body.
   a. pumps b. breathes c. infects d. cuts
9. Did he .... drive a car ?
   a. use b. uses c. use to d. uses to
10. Yesterday, Sally .... a new mobile phone.
    a. buy b. bought c. buys d. buying

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They <u>watch</u> an interesting match last week. (........)
2. I <u>use</u> to go to Alexandria when I was young. (........)
3. SB My uncle <u>used</u> be a firefighter, but now he is a police officer. (........)
4. I used to watch films on TV, but now I <u>didn't</u>. (........)

Unit 4 Into the past



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site
- **Listening :**
  A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate
- **Speaking :**
  Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism
- **Language :**
  Past continuous
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management; critical thinking
- **Values :**
  Co-existence values; Responsible behaviour
- **Issues :**
  Environmental and developmental issues

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة
• ملحق المهارات

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 95 & 96

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

historic (adj)	تاريخى	statue (n)	تمثال
arch (n)	قوس / قنطرة	stadium (n)	استاد (رياضى)
castle (n)	قلعة / حصن	ruins (n)	بقايا / أثار
mosque (n)	مسجد	awesome (adj)	رائع / مدهش
museum (n)	متحف	entrance (n)	مدخل
pyramid (n)	هرم	view (n)	منظر طبيعى / رؤية
theatre (n)	مسرح	ancient (adj)	قديم جدًا / عتيق
temple (n)	معبد	facts (n)	حقائق

Famous places

أمكان مشهورة

Leptis Magna	مدينة لبدة العظمى (موقع أثرى فى ليبيا)	Djemila	مدينة جميلة (موقع أثرى فى الجزائر)
Petra	مدينة البترا (فى الأردن)	The South Theatre	المسرح الجنوبى (فى الأردن)
Elephantine Island	جزيرة فيلة (فى أسوان)	The Pyramids of Dahshur	أهرامات دهشور
The Roman Theatre	المسرح الرومانى (فى مدينة الأسكندرية)	Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك (مدينة الأقصر)
Abydos	مدينة أبيدوس (موقع أثرى فى سوهاج)	National Stadium	الإستاد الوطنى

Different countries & cities

دول ومدن مختلفة

Egypt	مصر	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
Mali	دولة مالى	Giza	مدينة الجيزة
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Baalbeck	مدينة بعلبك (فى لبنان)
Lebanon	دولة لبنان	Jerash	مدينة جرش (فى الأردن)
Jordan	دولة الأردن	Djenne	مدينة جنى (فى مالى)
Libya	دولة ليبيا	Aswan	مدينة أسوان
		Assiut	مدينة أسيوط

Unit 4

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

arrive (d) (v)	يصل	objects (n)	أشياء
stones (n)	أحجار	rules (n)	قواعد / قوانين
rubbish = litter (n)	قمامة	sports match (n)	مباراة رياضية
touch (ed) (v)	يلمس	pray (ed) (v)	يصلى
bin (n)	سلة المهملات	walls (n)	حوائط / أسوار
properly (adv)	بطريقة مناسبة	complete (d) (v) , (adj)	يكمل / كامل
straight away (adv)	فى الحال/على الفور	road (n)	طريق
packed (adj)	معبأ	picnic (n)	نزهة (فى الهواء الطلق)
culture (n)	ثقافة	finally (adv)	فى النهاية
shower (n)	دش/استحمام	pool (n)	حمام سباحة
holiday (n)	أجازة	Muslims (n)	المسلمون
protect (ed) (v)	يحمى		

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

Roman (adj)	رومانى (من العصر الرومانى)	race (n)	سباق
ticket (n)	تذكرة	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / يفسر
hill (n)	تل	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصى / يرشح
future (n)	مستقبل	visit (ed) (v), (n)	يزور / زيارة
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك	review (n)	مقال نقدى
guide (n)	مرشد	amazing (adj)	مدهش
art (n)	فن	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	driven
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
noisy	صاخب / مزعج	quiet	هادئ
national	قومى	international	عالمى
go in	يدخل	go out	يخرج
ancient	عتيق / قديم جدا	modern	عصرى/حديث
higher	أعلى	lower	أكثر انخفاضًا

تنويه
هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

stadium	a place where you can watch a sports match	استاد رياضى
arch	• an entrance to another place • a curved (half circle) part of buildings	قنطرة
mosque	a place where Muslims pray	مسجد
castle	a place which has very strong walls	قلعة
ruins	• not a complete building • the broken parts that are left of a building or city	حطام / أطلال / آثار
historic	concerning history or connected with the past	تاريخى
awesome	• amazing • very good / great	مدهش / مذهل
guide	a person who can show you round a place	مرشد سياحى
ancient	very old	قديم / أثرى
view	what you can see from the top of something	منظر طبيعى - رؤية
touch	put your hand (or another part of your body) on something	يلمس

11 Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 35

Teacher : I'm sure you're all excited[1] about visiting the pyramids next Sunday. It's important[2] that we plan[3] our trip properly,[4] so I need to talk to you about rules[5]. On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away[6]. It's a long drive[7] to Giza from the school. We are going to be away from[8] school for the whole day[9], so you must bring a packed lunch[10]. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water. Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history[11] and culture[12] of our country. We must help to protect[13] them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter[14]. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us. So, are there any questions about the trip ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) متحمس	(2) هام	(3) يخطط	(4) بطريقة مناسبة	(5) قواعد	(6) على الفور / فورًا	(7) جولة طويلة بالسيارة
(8) بعيدًا عن	(9) يوم كامل	(10) وجبة غداء معبأة	(11) تاريخ	(12) ثقافة	(13) يحمى	(14) قمامة / مخلفات

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 35



You mustn't eat or drink. You must be quiet.



You must listen to the teacher. You mustn't be noisy[1] in class.



You mustn't touch the stones[2]. You must put your rubbish[3] in the bin[4].



You must have a shower[5] before you swim. You mustn't run near the pool[6].

Check Vocabulary

(1) صاخب / مزعج	(2) احجار	(3) قمامة	(4) سلة المهملات	(5) دش	(6) حمام سباحة

on Lesson 1 WB page 95



It is a long walk to the temple so you must all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it safely[1]. However, you must stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run there. When we arrive at the temple[2], you mustn't touch[3] any of the buildings[4] because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches[5] after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget to write about what you see!

Check Vocabulary

(1) بأمان | (2) معبد | (3) يلمس | (4) مبنى | (5) الغداء الخاص بالنزهة الخلوية

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

An amazing day out! ★★★★★



I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art[1] and ruins[2] in the desert[3]. I'm not usually very interested in[4] history, but this place is awesome[5]!
It is really amazing!
Maged, Cairo.

Get a guide[6] ★★★★

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to get a guide to tell you all about the history.
Leila, Assiut

Check Vocabulary

(1) فن | (2) بقايا آثار | (3) صحراء | (4) مهتم بـ | (5) رائع / مدهش | (6) مرشد

Go back to Roman times! ★★★★★

I visited the Roman theatre[7] in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It is easy to imagine[8] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues[9] and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun.

Samir, Giza

Check Vocabulary

المسرح الرومانى (7)	يتخيل (8)	تماثيل (9)

on Lesson 2 SB page 37

The City of Jerash
By Azza



Jerash is a Roman[1] city in Jordan[2]. It is more than 2,000 years old !

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance[3] to the city. The arch[4] is very tall. You must buy a ticket[5] before you go in.



The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium[6] is for Roman horse races[7]. You can watch races there today.



Jerash has three Roman theatres[8]. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.



This temple[9] is on a hill. There is an amazing view[10] of the city from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic[11] places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

Check Vocabulary

رومانى (1)	دولة الأردن (2)	مدخل (3)	قنطرة / قوس (4)	تذكرة (5)	استاد رياضى (6)
سباقات (7)	مسارح (8)	معبد (9)	منظر طبيعى (10)	تاريخى (11)	

Videoscript On Lesson 2 SB page 37 .

Narrator : These people are visiting the ancient site[1] of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago. There are lots of different ruins[2] at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world. You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues[3] and temples[4].

This is an obelisk[5]. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics[6] on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake[7]. Important people came here to wash themselves.

This is the amazing Temple of Amun. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has huge columns[8].

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must walk past[9] lots of statues of sphinx when they enter[10] the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and protected[11]. There are the ruins of the Temple of Montu. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.

Check Vocabulary

(1) موقع أثري قديم	(2) بقايا / أطلال	(3) تماثيل	(4) معابد	(5) مسلة حجرية	(6) اللغة الهيروغليفية
(7) البحيرة المقدسة	(8) أعمدة	(9) يمشي ماراً بـ	(10) يدخل	(11) محمى	

• on Lesson 2 WB page 96

My trip to Petra



I love historic(1) places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to(2) around 300 BCE(3), so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views(4) from some of the higher places are awesome(5), but you must be careful! Our guide(6) explained(7) how old the temples are : they are really ancient(8). I really enjoyed our day there and recommend(9) a visit!(10)

Check Vocabulary

تاريخى (1)	يعود تاريخه إلى (2)	قبل الميلاد (3)	مناظر طبيعية (4)	رائع / مدهش (5)
مرشد (6)	يفسر / يشرح (7)	قديم / عتيق (8)	يوصى / يقترح (9)	زيارة (10)

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
history	تاريخ (دراسة الأحداث الماضية)	– Students in Egypt study the modern Egyptian history in the secondary stage.
historic	تاريخى	– I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. الصفة (historic) تصف شيئًا تاريخيًا هام فى التاريخ مثل الأماكن الأثرية.
historical	تاريخى	– There are a lot of historical stories in our school library. الصفة (historical) تصف شيئًا تاريخيًا له علاقة بدراسة التاريخ.

so that

recommend (n.

Expressions ar

think of

have a shower

the entrance to

important to + inf.

(be) interested in (n / inf. + ing)

It's a good idea to + inf.

It dates to around

from the top of

walk for a long way through

so that	بمعنى لكي	Subject + verb ... so that + subject + can/could + inf. – We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too. (SB page 37)
recommend	يوصي بـ / يزكي (n. / inf. + ing) يتبعها	– I recommend visiting the Egyptian Museum. – I recommend a visit to the Egyptian Museum.

Expressions and Prepositions		التعبيرات وحروف الجر
think of	يفكر في (شيء)	– Think of a place we can visit this week.
have a shower	يأخذ دش (يستحم)	– You must have a shower before you swim in the pool. (SB page 35)
the entrance to	مدخل إلى ...	– When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance to the city. (SB page 37)
important to + inf.	هام لـ ...	– I think it is important to learn about historic places around the world. (SB page 37)
(be) interested in (n / inf. + ing)	مهتم بـ	– I'm not usually very interested in history / studying history. (SB page 36)
It's a good idea to + inf.	إنها فكرة جيدة أن ...	– It's a good idea to get a guide. (SB page 36)
It dates to around	يرجع تاريخه إلى حوالى	– Petra dates to around 300 BCE. (WB page 96)
from the top of	من على قمة ...	– A view means what you can see from the top of something. (WB page 96)
walk for a long way through	يمشي على امتداد الطريق من خلال	– You can walk for a long way through the old city of Petra. (WB page 96)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A lot of Muslims go to .... to pray.
   a. entrances b. castles c. mosques d. markets
2. It isn't a complete building. They're just ....
   a. museums b. arches c. ruins d. castles
3. Visiting the museum was really .... We all enjoyed our time there.
   a. tiring b. awesome c. boring d. terrible
4. Egypt has a lot of .... sites which date back to the Pharaohs.
   a. ancient b. modern c. recent d. new
5. You can see .... in a museum.
   a. sights b. statues c. states d. stages
6. That building has only one ....
   a. entrance b. subject c. scene d. project
7. I'd like a room with a .... on the beach.
   a. review b. interview c. view d. preview
8. Many tourists go to Luxor to enjoy watching the ....
   a. pyramids b. temples c. towers d. beaches
9. I want to go to the .... to watch a play.
   a. castle b. theatre c. cinema d. museum

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

10. SB It's easy to .... what life in Roman times was like here.
    a. get b. imagine c. need d. visit
11. WB I really enjoyed our day in Petra and recommend a/an .... !
    a. view b. visit c. entrance d. arch
12. SB It's a good idea to get a/an .... to tell you about the history.
    a. guide b. policeman c. engineer d. driver

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

13. Many people like watching horse .... and wait for the winner.
    a. buyers b. sellers c. races d. stables
14. It's important to .... historic places from thieves.
    a. destroy b. delete c. protect d. sell
15. You should .... well when you visit historic places in other countries.
    a. behave b. enter c. imagine d. recommend

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. I usually .... a shower every morning.
    a. have b. make c. do d. sell
17. I'm interested .... reading short stories.
    a. on b. at c. in d. of
18. From the top .... the tower you can see a beautiful view to the city.
    a. at b. on c. of d. in

III Language

Remember تذكر

Formation التكوين

1. must + inf. يجب أن

We use must to talk about things that are necessary.

تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام.

ex. - You must arrive on time.
- You must look right and left before you cross the road.
- You must speak English very well to be an English teacher.

2. mustn't + inf. يجب ألا

We use mustn't to talk about things that are necessary not to do.
تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن المنع أو الحظر لفعل شئ ما.

ex. - You mustn't be late.
- You mustn't talk in the library.
- You mustn't drink water from the canal. It's not clean.

3. We use the infinitive without "to" after must / mustn't :
لاحظ أننا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد (must / mustn't).

4 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A. Yes / No questions :: أ. السؤال بـ (هل)

Must + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + ... ?

ex. - Must I park here ?
- Yes, you must. - No, you mustn't.

B. Wh-question :: ب. السؤال بـكلمة استفهام

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + must / mustn't + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) .... ?

ex. - What must I do to my parents ?
- You must obey تطيع them.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB In a museum, you .... touch the objects.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. don't

2. SB You .... be quiet in the library.
   a. mustn't b. must c. can't d. shouldn't
3. WB It is hot today, so you .... all wear a hat.
   a. mustn't b. can c. haven't d. must
4. WB What must or mustn't you .... in a historic place ?
   a. doing b. does c. do d. did

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. You .... speak so loud!
   a. should b. mustn't c. must d. haven't
6. To eat fast is bad for you. You .... eat more slowly.
   a. must to b. must c. have d. will have
7. If you want to improve your English, you .... work very hard.
   a. can't b. may not c. must d. have
8. You .... talk to your classmates during the lessons.
   a. can b. must c. mustn't d. haven't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB You <u>mustn't</u> put your rubbish in the bin. (..................)
2. SB Students must <u>arrives</u> at school on time. (..................)
3. WB You <u>must</u> run in a museum. (..................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. You must <u>been</u> careful when you cross the road. (..................)
5. We <u>mustn't</u> look after our health. (..................)
6. We <u>must</u> be careless at school. (..................)
7. You mustn't <u>gets</u> on a train without a ticket. (..................)
8. You <u>must</u> park here. It's against the law. (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. I .... (not must) make noise during the lesson.
2. Hoda .... (must) shout at her mom.
3. Noran mustn't .... (drives) carelessly.

4. He mustn't .... (played) in the street.
5. Must I come early ? - Yes, you .... (mustn't).

IV Speaking Corner

1. Rules you must follow on visiting a place :
١. القواعد التى يجب اتباعها عند زيارة مكان ما :

- In a museum, you mustn't touch the objects.
  - داخل المتحف يجب عليك عدم ملامسة الأشياء.
- You must put your rubbish in the bin.
  - يجب أن تضع المخلفات فى السلة.
- In a temple, you mustn't run.
  - داخل المعبد لا يجب أن تجرى.
- In a temple, you mustn't forget to write about what you see.
  - داخل المعبد لا يجب أن تنسى كتابة ما ترى.
- You must protect the historic place so that people can visit in the future, too.
  - يجب أن تحمى المكان التاريخى حتى يستطيع الناس زيارته فى المستقبل أيضًا.

2. Asking and answering questions about historic places :
٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الأماكن التاريخية :

Questions	Answers
• What can we learn from historic places ? ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم من الأماكن التاريخية ؟	- We can learn about the history of our country and other countries. يمكن أن نعرف تاريخ بلدنا والبلاد الأخرى.
• How should we behave when we visit historic places in other countries ? كيف ينبغى أن نتصرف عند زيارتنا الأماكن التاريخية للبلاد الأخرى ؟	- We should protect them so that people can visit in the future. ينبغى أن نحميها حتى يتمكن الناس من زيارتها مستقبلًا.
• Which historic places you visited and you loved ? أى الأماكن التاريخية التى زرتها وأعجبتك ؟	- The Pyramids of Dahshur are awesome! I went there with my family last year and we loved them. أهرامات دهشور رائعة. ذهبت إليها مع أسرتى العام الماضى وأعجبنا بها.

3. Describing a historic place :

٣. وصف مكان تاريخي :

- Last year, I visited the Karnak Temple with my family.
  - لقد زرت معبد الكرنك مع عائلتي العام الماضي
- It's a famous place in Luxor.
  - إنه مكان مشهور بمدينة الأقصر
- You need a few hours to walk around it.
  - تحتاج إلى ساعات قليلة للتجول حول المعبد
- It's a good idea to get a guide.
  - إنها لفكرة جيدة أن تحصل على مرشد
- A guide can tell you all about the history.
  - يمكن للمرشد أن يخبرك بكل شيء عن التاريخ
- The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing.
  - كانت بقايا الآثار في معبد الكرنك مذهلة
- We really enjoyed our visit!
  - لقد استمتعنا حقًا بزيارتنا!

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكتروني

«An ancient historic place you visited «مكان تاريخي قديم قمت بزيارته»

1. I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria.
   ١. لقد زرت المسرح الروماني في مدينة الأسكندرية.
2. I went there with my cousins last week.
   ٢. لقد ذهبت إلى هناك مع أبناء عمومتي الأسبوع الماضي.
3. It is easy to imagine what life in Roman times was like there.
   ٣. إنه من السهل أن تتخيل كيف كانت الحياة في العصر الروماني هناك.
4. There were also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum.
   ٤. كان يوجد أيضًا تماثيل وبقايا آثار في المتحف.
5. It was great fun.
   ٥. كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did Maged visit Abydos ?
   a. Last week b. Last year c. Last month d. Yesterday
2. Who went with Maged to Abydos ? His ....
   a. uncle b. cousins c. aunt d. parents
3. What subject is not usually Maged interested in ?
   a. History b. Science c. Math d. English
4. What did Maged see in the desert ?
   a. Temples b. Art c. Ruins d. Statues

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?
Sama : (1) ....
Tourist : (2) .... ?
Sama : The Pyramids are in Giza.
Tourist : Are they far from here ?
Sama : (3) ....
Tourist : How can I go there ?
Sama : (4) ....
Tourist : (5) .... ?
Sama : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We visited the .... at the Karnak Temple yesterday. It was great fun.
   a. rules b. ruins c. pyramids d. tickets
2. I .... that you do more exercises regularly.
   a. touch b. comment c. recommend d. forget
3. I'd love to see that film. The .... says it is very funny.
   a. review b. lesson c. history d. research
4. Good students should follow the school ....
   a. roles b. rules c. lines d. ruins

5. WB Petra in Jordan .... to around 300 BCE.
   a. takes b. moves c. dates d. arrives
6. SB How should you behave when you visit .... places in other countries ?
   a. historian b. history c. historical d. historic
7. It's important to know .... about Egypt in the past.
   a. facts b. entrances c. castles d. pyramids
8. SB You .... eat or drink in the school library.
   a. mustn't b. must c. can d. should
9. Be careful! You .... eat healthy food.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
10. You .... behave well with old people..
   a. shouldn't b. must c. mustn't d. can't

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB You <u>mustn't</u> put your rubbish in the bin. (................)
2. SB You must <u>buying</u> your ticket before you enter a castle. (................)
3. Boys, you <u>mustn't to</u> do those bad things. (................)
4. WB What mustn't you <u>doing</u> at the museum ? (................)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. You mustn't .... (making) noise in class.
2. Students must .... (arrives) on time.
3. Must we .... (following) the rules ?
4. Ali must .... (is) quiet in class.
5. We must .... (to help) the poor.

6 Write an email of NINETY(90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Omar about an amazing day out. Your name is Hussien and your email address is hussien@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.

....

....

....

Lessons **3 & 4**



SB pages 38 : 40 WB pages 97 & 98

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Museum objects أشياء توجد بالمتحف

tool (n)	أداة	mask (n)	قناع
vase (n)	زهرية (إناء للزينة)	figure (n)	تمثال (لشخصية بارزة)
bowl (n)	وعاء / سلطانية	ring (n)	خاتم
pot (n)	إناء (من الفخار)	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
coin (n)	عملة معدنية		

Materials مواد خام

papyrus (n)	نبات / ورق البردى	wood (n)	خشب
clay (n)	صلصال	metal (n)	معدن

Museums in Egypt متاحف فى مصر

Museum of Islamic Art	متحف الفن الإسلامى	Museum of History	متحف التاريخ
Museum of Arts	متحف الفنون		

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 97

web page (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت	designs (n)	تصميمات
magazine (n)	مجلة	equipment (n)	معدات
opening times (n)	أوقات الفتح	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
price (n)	سعر	neck (n)	رقبة
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	model (n)	نموذج / مثال مجسم
doorbell (n)	جرس الباب	cover (ed) (v), (n)	يغطى / غطاء
repair (ed) (v)	يصلح	except (prep)	باستثناء / ما عدا
ticket officer (n)	موظف حجز التذاكر	runner (n)	عدّاء / متسابق
customer (n)	زبون / عميل	call (ed) (v)	ينادى / يتصل تليفونيًا

Lesson

paint (ed) (v)
insects (n)
mirrors (n)
mix (ed) (v)
ingredients

Conjug

ring
hold
draw
keep away

Words

huge
adult
certainly
popular

Study

coins
figure
mask

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 98

paint (ed) (v), (n)	يلون / يدهن - دهان	senet (n)	(السينيت) لعبة فرعونية قديمة
insects (n)	حشرات	chemical (n)	مادة كيميائية
mirrors (n)	مرايا	mosquitos (n)	بعوض / ناموس
mix (ed) (v)	يخلط / يمزج	oil (n)	زيت
ingredients (n)	مقادير / مكونات	wind (n)	رياح

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ring	يرن / يدق	rang	rung
hold	يمسك	held	held
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
keep away	يبعد	kept away	kept away

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
huge	ضخم	tiny	ضئيل (صغير الحجم)
adult	بالغ سن الرشد	child	طفل
certainly	بالتأكيد	probably	من المحتمل
popular	محبوب / شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب / غير شائع

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

coins	small, flat pieces of metal, usually round in shape that we use as money	عملات معدنية
figure	a model of a person / a picture of someone	نموذج أو تمثال (بشرى)
mask	something people wear to cover or protect their face	قناع

Word	Meaning	Arabic
necklace	jewellery you wear around your neck	عقد / قلادة
tool	• a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things • an instrument that you hold in your hand and use for making or repairing things	أداة / آلة
vase	• a pot used for holding flowers • something which people put flowers in, or have in their home as decoration	زهرية (إناء للزينة)
clay	a type of mud (earth and water). It is soft when wet, but becomes hard when it is dry, and you can make things with it	طين / صلصال
design	a pattern used to decorate something	تصميم
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants that was used in ancient Egypt	نبات البردى
senet	an ancient Egyptian game	السنيت (لعبة فرعونية قديمة)

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Boy : Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad!



Check Vocabulary

متحف الفن الإسلامي (1)

While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.

While we were looking around[1] the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off my shoes[2]! He gave me my bag.

Check Vocabulary

يتجول (1) يخلع حذائه (2)

Reading

on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Ticket Officer[1] : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you ?

Customer[2] : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open[3] ?

Ticket Officer : Certainly[4]. We open from 9.30 to 6.30 every day except[5] Friday. We close[6] then.

Customer : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

Ticket Officer : Of course. Adults[7] are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets[8] at the museum ?

Ticket Officer : Yes, or you can buy them online[9].

Customer : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

Check Vocabulary

موظف حجز التذاكر (1)	زبون / عميل (2)	مفتوح (3)	بالتأكيد (4)	ما عدا (5)
يغلق (6)	البالغين (7)	تذاكر (8)	متصل بالإنترنت (9)	

Listening

- on Lesson 4 WB page 98



1. These are made of wood[1]. People use them to play a game.



2. These are usually made of plastic[2]. They help to protect your eyes from the sun.



3. These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away[3] insects[4].



4. This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix[5] ingredients[6] when they are cooking.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خشب	(2) بلاستيك	(3) يبعد	(4) حشرات	(5) يمزج / يخلط	(6) مكونات / مقادير

Reading

- on Lesson 4 SB page 40

Objects from Egypt's past

Objects[1] from the past can help us to understand[2] what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt[3], many people used mirrors[4] to help them paint[5] around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good[6]: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away[7] insects[8]. The mirrors were metal[9] and had interesting designs[10]. Where do you have mirrors in your home ?





Check Vocabulary

(1) أشياء	(2) يفهم	(3) مصر القديمة	(4) مرايا	(5) يلون
(6) يبدو جميلًا	(7) يبعد/يمنع	(8) حشرات	(9) معدن	(10) تصميمات

The Ancient Egyptians used pots[11] and bowls[12] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay[13], which came from the River Nile[14]. While some people were mixing[15] ingredients[16] for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today ?



Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet[17]. Senet boxes have 30 squares[18]. This box is made of wood[19] and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are popular[20] in Egypt today ?



Check Vocabulary

(11) أوانى من الفخار	(12) أوعية	(13) صلصال	(14) نهر النيل	(15) يخلط
(16) مكونات/مقادير	(17) لعبة فرعونية قديمة	(18) مربعات	(19) خشب	(20) محبوب/مشهور

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
tool	أداة بسيطة (يدوية)	– A hammer شاكوش is an important tool for hitting nails مسامير into wood.
equipment	معدات ذات غرض معين مثل الأدوات الطبية والإلكترونية وتعامل معاملة المفرد مثل (money, bread, information ...)	– Diving needs breathing equipment. ولجعلها مفرد (اسم معدود) تسبق بكلمة (a piece of - pieces of) – A tool is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.

(WB page 97)

(be) made in + مكان / سنة	يصنع في (بلد)	– Cotton shirts are best made in Egypt.
(be) made of + المادة	يصنع من .... (المادة) المصنوع منها الشيء لا تتغير بعد التصنيع	– These bowls are made of clay.
(be) made from + المادة	يصنع من .... (المادة) المصنوع منها الشيء تتغير بعد التصنيع	– Glass is made from sand.
use [to + inf. / for + inf. + ing]	يستخدم ... لـ	– They used big clay bowls to mix ingredients for food. *(WB page 98)* – The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus for writing.
ring (n) ring (v)	خاتم يتصل تليفونيا - يرن	– He bought a gold ring for his wife. – I rang Leen six times, but she didn't answer.

Expressions and Prepositions		**التعبيرات وحروف الجر**
at the museum	في المتحف	– Buy tickets online or at the museum. *(SB page 38)*
on the web page	على صفحة الإنترنت	– Use the information on the web page to answer the questions. *(SB page 38)*
protect ... from	يحمي ... من	– The paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun. *(SB page 40)*
look good	يبدو جميلا	– They paint around their eyes to make them look good.
paint around their eyes	يقومون بطلاء حول أعينهم	– People used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. *(SB page 40)*
make ... with	يصنع ... من	– People made pots with clay from the Nile. *(SB page 40)*
take off my shoes	أخلع حذائي	– Amir arrived while I was taking off my shoes. *(SB page 39)*

Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The Pharaohs were the first to write on ....
   a. papyrus b. clay c. metal d. figure
2. A .... is a piece of jewellery you wear around your neck.
   a. vase b. ring c. mask d. necklace
3. Pots and bowls were made of .... in ancient Egyptian time.
   a. glass b. metal c. clay d. wood
4. She is wearing a nice .... on her finger.
   a. ring b. shirt c. necklace d. coin
5. I bought a new .... to hold some flowers in my room.
   a. bowl b. pot c. vase d. garden
6. A .... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things.
   a. tool b. type c. table d. mask
7. .... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a. Cans b. Coins c. Pots d. Bowls

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. SB Can you tell me the .... of the ticket, please ?
   a. culture b. vase c. price d. figure
9. SB Senet boxes have 30 ....
   a. circles b. squares c. figures d. vases
10. SB People .... the ingredients in big bowls.
    a. fixed b. painted c. mixed d. covered
11. WB Bees and ants are important ....
    a. birds b. insects c. tools d. animals

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

12. What sports are .... in Egypt today ?
    a. black b. polar c. happy d. popular
13. In the museum, there are more than 2,000 ....
    a. animals b. parts c. objects d. subjects
14. The ticket .... sells tickets at the museum.
    a. officer b. doctor c. engineer d. driver
15. The best .... in the race was the young boy.
    a. runner b. senet c. chemical d. jewellery
16. The .... of this building is really wonderful.
    a. design b. sign c. object d. subject

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

17. We should protect ourselves .... pollution.
    a. on b. from c. at d. in
18. This table is made .... wood.
    a. on b. in c. of d. from
19. Paper is made .... wood.
    a. from b. in c. out d. of

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Formation التكوين

1. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

I - He - She - It فاعل مفرد →	was	+	inf. المصدر	+	ing
We - You - They فاعل جمع →	were				

ex. - I was eating my dinner.
- They were studying maths.

2. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد + was + not + inf. المصدر + ing
We - You - They / فاعل جمع + were + not + inf. المصدر + ing

ex. - I was not eating my dinner.
- They were not studying maths.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

was not → wasn't were not → weren't

3. Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

- Yes / No questions : * السؤال بـ (هل)

was / were + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ing ?

ex. - Was she holding a camera?
- Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.
- Were they watching TV?
- Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

- Wh - questions : * السؤال بإستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + was / were + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ing ?

ex. - What were you doing at 5 o'clock yesterday ?
- I was doing my homework.

ex. - What was she doing yesterday evening ?
- She was brushing her teeth.

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

ex. - I was watching TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

- كما يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر أيضًا للتعبير عن فعل كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر قصير فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex. - While I was doing my homework, the telephone rang.

لاحظ الآتى :

While/As/Just as	بينما/أثناء	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر	,	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط	while/as/just as	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. - I saw my friend Amir while we were waiting to go into the museum.

When عندما	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط	,	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. When I saw Ahmed, he was playing football.

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر	when	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. Ali **was reading** a book when the light went out.

Add to your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

1. لاحظ إذا لم يتبع (While) فاعل فيكون الفعل بعدها كالتالى :

While	+	(inf + ing)	,	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

- While running, Reham fell down.

2. لاحظ عند وصف حدثين كانا يحدثان فى نفس الوقت دون أن يقطع أحدهما الأخر تستخدم الترتيب التالى :

While As Just as	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر	,	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. While Salma was eating, Mona was watching TV.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. We were looking around the museum .... Amir found some tall doors.
   a. while b. when c. as d. during
2. WB When we .... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.
   a. was sitting b. sat c. sits d. sit
3. WB I was doing my homework when my sister .... me.
   a. call b. called c. was calling d. calls
4. WB As Karim .... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
   a. takes b. was taking c. took d. were taking

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. While Ali was reading a story, his mum .... in the kitchen.
   a. cook b. cooking c. was cooking d. cooks
6. .... his homework when the phone rang ?
   a. Did he do b. Was he doing c. Does he do d. Is he doing
7. What was Samar .... at 5 yesterday ?
   a. did b. do c. doing d. to do
8. While .... in the garden, it started to rain.
   a. works b. worked c. work d. working

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB As we <u>walked</u> into the museum, we saw some huge statues.

(..........................)

2. SB While we travelled home, Amir phoned me. (..................)
3. WB Lots of birds flew in the sky as we were sitting down on the beach. (..................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. While they are studying, the phone rang. (..................)
5. What was you doing at six yesterday ? (..................)
6. She was cooking while her father reads a book. (..................)
7. Tarek wasn't watch TV at 5 yesterday. (..................)
8. Is she doing her homework at 7 yesterday ? (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets :

1. What .... (you do) at 7 yesterday ?
2. Hana .... (were) reading at 6 yesterday.
3. When Ali arrived, Hoda .... (cook).
4. While .... (study), the light went out.
5. As Sama .... (watch) TV, she heard a sound in the kitchen.

IV Speaking Corner

Remember تذكر

Asking for information on the telephone :

السؤال عن معلومات عبر الهاتف :

– How can I help you ?	- كيف يمكننى مساعدتك ؟
– Hello, can you tell me ... ?	- مرحبًا، هل يمكن أن تخبرنى بـ ... ؟
– Certainly./Of course. It's ...	- بالتأكيد / نعم بالطبع. إنه ...
– I'd like to know what time ...	- أود أن أعرف ما الوقت ...
– Can I buy ... ?	- هل يمكننى شراء ... ؟
– Thank you for your help.	- شكرًا على مساعدتك.

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What game did the Ancient Egyptians like ?
   a. Football b. Basketball c. Handball d. Senet
2. How many squares do senet boxes have ?
   a. 60 b. 30 c. 40 d. 50
3. What is the senet box made of ?
   a. Metal b. Plastic c. Wood d. Glass
4. Where did they draw the squares ?
   a. On the wall b. On the floor c. On the door d. On the window

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Receptionist : Good morning. Museum of History.
Mona : Good morning. (1) .... ?
Receptionist : We are open from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m.
Mona : (2) .... ?
Receptionist : No, we are open daily except Friday.
Mona : Can I buy the tickets online for the museum ?
Receptionist : (3) ....
Mona : (4) .... ?
Receptionist : A ticket costs 20 pounds for a person.
Mona : Can I get my children with me ?
Receptionist : (5) ...., you're welcome.
Mona : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I can answer all the questions .... for the last one.
   a. expect b. except c. accept d. excepted
2. WB A .... is a pot used for holding flowers.
   a. necklace b. mask c. vase d. tool

3. There are more than 2.000 .... in the museum.
   a. parts b. objects c. insects d. birds

4. The Ancient Egyptians used big .... bowls to mix ingredients for food.
   a. metal b. plastic c. clay d. wood

5. The main .... of koshari are pasta and rice.
   a. ingredients b. squares c. pots d. coins

6. A/An .... is a model of a person.
   a. face b. object c. ingredient d. figure

7. The Ancient Egyptians used .... for writing.
   a. masks b. jewellery c. coins d. papyrus

8. While she .... her mum, the phone rang.
   a. help b. helps c. was helping d. helped

9. He .... the book when the light went off.
   a. is reading b. reads c. was reading d. read

10. While they were playing cards, Ali's father .... home.
   a. coming b. were coming c. comes d. came

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They were <u>travel</u> for a long time. (........)
2. She was wearing a nice dress <u>while</u> Salma saw her. (........)
3. When I <u>see</u> him on the road, he was driving a beautiful car. (........)
4. He <u>writes</u> a letter when his uncle came. (........)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

1. Hala .... (read) a story when her son dropped the toy.
2. I was reading a book while mum .... (cook).
3. What .... (you do) when I phoned you ?
4. .... (be) you sleeping when the light went out.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A visit to the museum"

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

tourism (n)	سياحة	local people (n)	المحليون (سكان البلد)
tourists (n)	سائحون	needle (n)	إبرة / مسلة (فرعونية)
environment (n)	البيئة	Pharaoh (n)	فرعون
damage (d) (v)	يدمر / يتلف	heading (n)	عنوان رئيسى
company (n)	شركة	subheading (n)	عنوان فرعى
pollution (n)	تلوث	debate (n)	مناقشة / مناظرة

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 99

holiday companies (n)	شركات السياحة	oil company (n)	شركة بترول
drop (ped) (v)	يلقى / يسقط	lake (n)	بحيرة
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط / خطة
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
injure (d) (v)	يصيب /يجرح		

Famous people and places — أشخاص وأماكن مشهورة

Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية بسينيغامبيا (فى السنغال)
Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا
Thutmose III	الملك تحتمس الثالث

Famous Rivers — أنهار مشهورة

the River Gambia	نهر غامبيا
the River Thames	نهر التايمز (فى إنجلترا)

دول ومدن

Countries & Cities

Senegambia	مدينة سينيغامبيا	United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة
Senegal	دولة السنغال	Wassu	واسو (مدينة فى غامبيا)
Gambia	دولة غامبيا		
England (n)	دولة انجلترا		

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 100

report (n)	تقرير (مكتوب)	across (prep)	عبر
stone circles (n)	الدوائر الحجرية (اثر)	the British (n)	البريطانيون
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يقتفي اثر	weigh (ed) (v)	يزن
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن	storm (n)	عاصفة
label (led) (v)	يلصق / يرفق (بطاقة)	earthquake (n)	زلزال
map (n)	خريطة	noise (n)	ضوضاء
diagrams (n)	رسوم توضيحية	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
bullet point (n)	النقاط (فى الكتابة)	later (adv)	فيما بعد
sign (n)	لافتة / علامة	nearly (adv)	تقريبًا
rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر - مطر	monuments (n)	آثار
designs (n)	تصميمات		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid	paid
sink	يغوص / يغرق (للأشياء)	sank	sunk
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض / يعارض
more	أكثر	less	أقل
busy	مشغول / مزدحم	free	حر / فاضى
near	قريب	far away	بعيد
sink	يغوص	float	يطفو

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

company	a business that makes money by producing or selling things or services شركة
debate	when different people with different ideas talk about a subject مناقشة أو مناظرة
damage	have a bad or harmful effect on something so that it is broken or spoiled يتلف / يدمر

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• **On Lesson 5 SB page 41**

Amira: What do you think, Hana ? Is tourism(1) good for historic(2) places ?

Hana : Yes, Amira, I think it is. Tourists(3) bring money to an area(4). This helps the local people(5).

Amira: I don't think so. .... a lot of the money goes to big companies(6), not local people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment(7) and the local people.

Amira: I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter(8) and damage(9) places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins(10).

Hana : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave(11) well. They know it's important to protect historic places.

Check Vocabulary

(1) السياحة	(2) تاريخي	(3) سائحون	(4) منطقة	(5) السكان المحليون	(6) شركات
(7) البيئة	(8) قمامة	(9) يدمر/يتلف	(10) بقايا الآثار القديمة	(11) يتصرف / يسلك	

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Fady : Do you think this plan[1] for a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

Baher : I don't think so[2]. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady : I don't agree[3]. More tourists in the area[4] can help the local people.

Baher : Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage[5] the environment[6].

Fady : I see what you mean[7]. It's important to protect[8] the environment.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خطة	(2) لا أعتقد ذلك	(3) لا أوافق	(4) منطقة	(5) يتلف / يدمر	(6) البيئة	(7) افهم ما تقصد	(8) يحمي

• on Lesson 5 WB page 99

While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided[1] it was a great place to build a new hotel[2]. The hotel will give work to[3] a lot of people. We are a big company[4], so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. This is the time when the hotel will be busy[5]. There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake[6]. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. Let me know what you think of our plan.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقرر	(2) فندق	(3) يوفر عمل لـ	(4) شركة	(5) مزدحم / مشغول	(6) بحيرة

• on Lesson 6 SB page 42

Report on the Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles[1]?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They follow[2] the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.



Check Vocabulary

(1) الدوائر الحجرية (مكان أثرى)	(2) يتبع / يقتفى أثر

Why are the stone circles important ?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.



How old are the stone circles ?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them ?



- Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage[3] them. Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones[4].

Check Vocabulary

(3) يدمر	(4) أحجار

on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle ?



- Cleopatra's Needle[1] is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames[2] in London, England.

How old is it ?

- The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh[3] Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.

How big is it ?

- The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs[4] about 200,000 kilograms.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مسلة	(2) نهر التايمز (فى إنجلترا)	(3) فرعون	(4) يزن

How did it get to this country ?

- The British[5] made a special[6] ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank[7] in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

Check Vocabulary

(5) البريطانيون	(6) خاص	(7) يغرق

- on Lesson 7 WB page 101

What do these signs mean ?



1. You mustn't drink this.
١- يجب عليك ألا تشرب.



2. You mustn't touch this.
٢- يجب عليك ألا تلمس هذا.



3. You must turn right.
٣- يجب عليك أن تتجه ناحية اليمين.



4. You must watch out for cows.
٤- يجب عليك الحذر من البقر أثناء القيادة.

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes — الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
needle (n)	إبرة (للخياطة)	– I need a needle and thread خيط to sew the torn shirt قميص ممزق.
needle (n)	مسلة (حجر تاريخي)	– Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.
sink (v)	يغرق / يغوص (للأشياء)	– While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. *(WB page 100)*
drown (v)	يغرق (للأشخاص والحيوانات)	– He drowned in the river as he couldn't swim.

Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

have a class debate	يقوم بمناظرة أو مناقشة في الفصل	– Amira and Hana are having a class debate. (SB page 41)
good for	جيد لـ ...	– Is tourism good for historic places ? (SB page 41)
bring money to ...	يجلب مال إلى ...	– Tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people. (SB page 41)
make pollution	يسبب تلوث	– Tourists often travel by car. This makes more pollution. (SB page 41)
give work to	يوفر عمل لـ ...	– The hotel will give work to a lot of people. (WB page 99)
plan for	خطة لـ ...	– Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea ? (WB page 99)
pay for	يدفع (مال) لـ ...	– Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. (SB page 42)
make ... for	يصنع شيئاً من أجل ...	– The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III. (WB page 100)
walk up ...	يصعد لأعلى	– Manal was thirsty when she was walking up that big hill. (WB page 101)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Using cars makes more ....
   a. population b. polluted c. pollute d. pollution
2. Dropping rubbish .... the environment.
   a. behaves b. damages c. collects d. cleans

3. .... is one of the important activities which brings money to Egypt.
   a. Diagram b. Tourism c. Rubbish d. Term
4. Cleopatra's .... is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.
   a. String b. Needle c. Pyramid d. Mask

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB Money from tourism helps to .... for local people to look after the stones circles.
   a. travel b. pay c. add d. injure
6. WB Ali's uncle works for a big oil .... in the United Arab Emirates.
   a. work b. job c. company d. hotel
7. WB You can see beautiful .... on Cleopatra's Needle.
   a. headings b. designs c. subheadings d. storms

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. It's important to .... the environment.
   a. think b. damage c. protect d. deal
9. Plastic doesn't .... in water.
   a. drown b. sink c. injure d. include
10. The .... damaged the city at 5 in the evening.
    a. earthquake b. environment c. tourism d. company
11. The manager read a .... about what the workers did.
    a. passage b. subject c. report d. title

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. How much did you pay .... that new car ?
    a. on b. for c. to d. with
13. He has just walked .... the hill and wants to see the view of the city.
    a. away b. off c. out d. up

14. The manager has a new plan .... building a new branch فرع of the company.

a. on b. to c. for d. at

15. That project will .... work to a lot of people in our city.

a. take b. give c. have d. make

III Speaking Corner

1 A debate about the effects of tourism : مناقشة / مناظرة حول تأثيرات السياحة :

Stimulus ?	Response ✓
A : Is tourism good for historic places ? هل السياحة جيدة للأماكن التاريخية ؟	B : Yes, I think it is good. نعم، اعتقد انها جيدة B : No, I don't think so. لا، لا أعتقد ذلك.
A : Why do you think it is good ? لماذا تعتقد إنها جيدة ؟	B : As tourists bring money to our country. لأن السياح يقومون بجلب المال الى بلدنا
A : Why do you think it is bad ? لماذا تعتقد إنها سيئة / ضارة ؟	B : Because tourists often travel by car. This makes more pollution. لأن السائحون غالبًا ما يسافرون بالسيارة وهذا يسبب تلوث أكثر.
A : Do you think this helps local people ? هل تعتقد أن ذلك يساعد السكان المحليون ؟	B : I don't think so. A lot of money goes to big companies. لا أعتقد ذلك. الكثير من المال يذهب إلى الشركات الكبيرة.
A : I think some holiday companies help the environment. اعتقد أن بعض شركات السياحة تساعد البيئة	B : I disagree with you. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places. لا أتفق معك فى ذلك. السياح يلقون القمامة ويدمرون الأماكن.

A : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well in historic places.
أفهم ما تقصد ولكن معظم السياح يتصرفون بطريقة جيدة فى الأماكن التاريخية.

B : I hope all tourists protect our monuments.
أتمنى أن يحافظ جميع السياح على معالمنا الأثرية

② Asking for opinions, agreeing and disagreeing :

السؤال عن الرأى، الموافقة وعدم الموافقة.

Asking for opinion	Replies	
Do you think visiting historic places is fun ?	**Agreeing :**	**الموافقة**
هل تعتقد أن زيارة الأماكن التاريخية ممتعة ؟	– Yes, I think so.	- نعم اعتقد ذلك
	– Maybe.	- ربما
	– I agree.	- اتفق معك
	Disagreeing :	**الرفض**
	– I don't think so.	- لا أعتقد ذلك.
	– I don't agree with you that ...	- لا أتفق معك فى ذلك ...
	– I don't agree.	- لا أوافق.
	– I see what you mean, but ...	- أفهم ما تعنى ولكن......

IV Writing

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

When you write a report :
عند كتابة تقرير يجب مراعاة الآتى :

- include subheadings for each paragraph
- أن يتضمن عناوين فرعية لكل فقرة
- label maps, pictures, photos and diagrams
- أن ترفق بطاقات وصفية للخرائط، للصور، وللرسومات التوضيحية
- use a bullet point (•) for each fact
- أن تستخدم النقطة (•) لكل حقيقة

General Exercises On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What's Cleopatra's Needle ?
   a. A small stone b. A large stone
   c. A large statue d. A small statue
2. Where's Cleopatra's Needle ?
   a. In England b. In France c. In Egypt d. In Germany
3. What can you see on Cleopatra's Needle ?
   a. Diagrams b. Ships c. Designs d. Views
4. Where's the River Thames ?
   a. In London b. In Paris c. In Cairo d. In Athens

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : I saw a picture of Cleopatra's Needle.
Baleegh : Really ! (1) .... ?
Ayman : It's next to the River Thames in London.
Baleegh : (2) .... ?
Ayman : It is about 3,500 years old.
Baleegh : Awesome ! How did it get to England ?
Ayman : (3) ....
Baleegh : A special ship! (4) .... ?
Ayman : It is more than 20 metres high and weighs about 200,000 kg.
Baleegh : (5) .... ! It's very big.
Ayman : I think we should be proud of our history.
Baleegh : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I see what you .... It's important to do the project.
   a. eat b. mean c. pay d. give
2. Tourism .... money to our country.
   a. brings b. travels c. pays d. works

3. Heba and Mayar are having a class .... today.
   a. heading b. subheading c. debate d. storm
4. Smoking can .... your health.
   a. plan b. damage c. weigh d. bring
5. The price for the hotel .... the meals.
   a. consists b. includes c. contains d. weighs
6. You should .... the names of places on the map.
   a. win b. label c. rain d. mean
7. According to the ...., you should turn right to get to the museum.
   a. diagram b. map c. storm d. report
8. As I was watching TV, Mum .... in the kitchen.
   a. cook b. cooking c. was cooking d. cooks
9. WB Most of the people .... when the earthquake started.
   a. sleep b. were sleeping c. slept d. sleeps
10. I heard a strange noise .... I was walking through the park.
   a. so b. while c. during d. through

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. As Mr Ali was walking to school, he <u>see</u> an old friend. (............)
2. WB While the ship <u>travel</u> to London, it nearly sank in a storm. (............)
3. WB You <u>must</u> drink this water. It's dirty. (............)
4. SB You <u>mustn't</u> protect all parts of the environment. (............)

5 Write an email of NINETY(90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Khalid about Cleopartra's Needle. Your name is sherif and your email address is sherif@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is khalid@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

- ممتاز
- جيد جدا
- جيد
- غير جيد

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموجودة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to — في نهاية هذه الوحدة، ساكون قادرا على

1 Learn important vocabulary تعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

☐ mosque	☐ statue
☐ castle	☐ historic
☐ needle	☐ view
☐ tourism	☐ vase
☐ necklace	☐ coins
☐ mask	☐ damage

2 Read and write sentences using must/mustn't + inf. and the past continuous tense.

اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام (يجب / لا يجب) وبعدهم مصدر الفعل وزمن الماضي المستمر

- ☐ You must buy your ticket before you enter the castle.
- ☐ You mustn't climb on the walls. It's dangerous.
- ☐ While I was playing on the computer, I found out an interesting fact.
- ☐ When I dropped my pencil, I was doing my homework.

3 Ask for information on the telephone.

اسأل عن معلومات في الهاتف.

- ☐ A : How can I help you ?
- ☐ B : Hello, can you tell me what times the museum is open ?
- ☐ A : Certainly, we are open from 9 : 30 to 6 : 30 every day except Fridays.
- ☐ B : Thanks for your help.

لمزيد من التدريبات • جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

REVIEW on unit 4

SB page 43 WB page 1..

1. Vocabulary

arch	قنطرة / قوس	Pharaoh	فرعون
coin	عملة معدنية	environment	بيئة
mask	قناع	tourism	سياحة
ruins	آثار / بقايا	damage	يدمر / يتلف
tool	أداة	company	شركة
vase	فازة (زهرية)	local	محلى
stones	أحجار	earthquake	زلزال
papyrus	ورق البردى	statue	تمثال
ring	خاتم	castle	قلعة
necklace	عقد	culture	ثقافة

2. Language

- للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شئ ما نستخدم : **Subject** فاعل **+ must + inf.**
  - You must look right and left before you cross the road.
- للتعبير عن المنع أو الحظر عن فعل شئ ما نستخدم : **Subject** فاعل **+ mustn't + inf.**
  - You mustn't look at the sun directly.

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

While/As/Just as بينما/أثناء	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر	,	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. While mum **was cooking**, my grandfather arrived.

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط	while/as/just as	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. The light went out as Ali **was reading** a book.

When عندما	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط	,	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. When I saw Ahmed, he **was riding** a bike.

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر	When	Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. Ali **was reading** a book when the light went out.

while As just as	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر	,	Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

ex. While Nada **was doing** her homework, Mohamed was playing football.

3. Speaking

Asking for information on the telephone :

السؤال عن معلومات فى الهاتف :

Questions ?

- How can I help you ?	كيف يمكننى مساعدتك ؟
- Hello, can you tell me ... ?	مرحبًا ، هل يمكن أن تخبرنى ... ؟
- Certainly/Of course. It's ...	بالتأكيد / نعم بالطبع. إنه ...
- I'd like to know what time ...	أود أن أعرف ما الوقت ...
- Can I buy ... ?	هل يمكننى شراء ... ؟
- Thank you for your help.	شكرًا لمساعدتك.

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات / رسائل بريد إلكترونى هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

"An amazing day out"

I visited Jerash with my cousins last year. Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old ! When we went there, the first thing we saw was the entrance to the city. The arch was very tall. We watched races for horses in the Roman stadium. Jerash has three Roman theatres. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here. There is an amazing view of the city from there. It was great fun.

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية أو البريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ Describing a historic place / A report about a historic site / An amazing day out / A visit to the museum / Objects from Egypt's past

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- Do you know any historic places ? If so, what are they ?
- Where is this historic place ?
- When was it built ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

historic	stones
important	Pharaohs
ancient	awesome
beautiful designs	mask
figure	
interesting	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- .... is large and important with beautiful designs.
- The Ancient Egyptians made this for ....
- I love going to historic places such as ....
- This place / figure dates to ....

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

"Cleopatra's Needle"

....
....
....
....
....

Historic places and the effect of tourism on the monuments

project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن الأماكن التاريخية وتأثير السياحة على الآثار



Objectives الأهداف

1. To describe a historic place. أن تصف مكان تاريخي (أثري).
2. To write a report about a historic site. أن تكتب تقريرًا عن موقع تاريخي.
3. To know the importance of tourism. أن تعرف أهمية السياحة.
4. To know the effect of tourism on historic places.
أن تعرف تأثير السياحة على الأماكن التاريخية.

Get started استعد

1. Is tourism good for historic places ? ١. هل السياحة جيدة للأماكن التاريخية ؟
2. Can you name some of the historic places in Egypt ?
٢. هل يمكنك ذكر بعض الاماكن التاريخية فى مصر ؟

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on the effect of tourism on Karnak Temple.

اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن تأثير السياحة على معبد الكرنك.

OR Write a short paragraph on Cleopatra's Needle.

أو اكتب فقرة قصيرة عن مسلة كليوباترا.

Support your paragraph using pictures. ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg - بنك المعرفة المصرى
* The internet - الانترنت
* Student's books - الكتب المدرسية

Test yourself unit 4

تنويه
بمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The Ancient Egyptians used .... for making food.
   a. pots b. bowls c. pots and bowls d. plastic plates
2. Pots and bowls were made of ....
   a. mud b. clay c. wood d. metal
3. Clay was taken from the ....
   a. sea b. beach c. hospital d. River Nile
4. The Ancient Egyptians were very ....
   a. bad b. evil c. clever d. stupid

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : What are you doing, Bassem ?
Bassem : (1) ....
Ahmed : Where are the Stone Circles of Senegambia ?
Bassem : (2) ....
Ahmed : Senegal and Gambia! (3) .... ?
Bassem : They are in Africa.
Ahmed : (4) .... ?
Bassem : Because they tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.
Ahmed : (5) .... ?
Bassem : Yes, tourists can visit them.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. **They** can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to **protect** their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home ?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What do you think of the Ancient Egyptians ?

....

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "***They***" refers to ....

a. years b. objects c. designs d. mirrors

5. The underlined word "***protect***" means ....

a. object b. attack c. help d. keep safe

6. You can look at yourself at the ....

a. bowls b. mirror c. pots d. River Nile

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The view from the top of the mountain was really ....

a. amazed b. amazing c. boring d. tiring

2. SB We must .... the historic places around the world.

a. connect b. suspect c. protect d. affect

3. WB We were all .... when he finished that funny story.

a. laughing b. walking c. crying d. afraid

4. WB The Cleopatra's Needle is next to the .... Thames in London.

a. canal b. ocean c. sea d. river

5. Horse .... is really wonderful. I like watching it so much in the stadium.
   a. ruin b. race c. stable d. place
6. As Mr Omar was walking to work, he .... an old friend.
   a. arrived b. lost c. saw d. gave
7. Can you .... what you mean ?
   a. explain b. plan c. know d. recognize
8. While I .... about the museum, my mother bought me some juice.
   a. read b. is reading c. was reading d. reading
9. What .... when I phoned you ?
   a. were you doing b. you were doing
   c. are you doing d. did you do
10. You mustn't .... rubbish here.
   a. drop b. dropped c. to drop d. dropping

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. You .... (must) eat or drink in a museum.
2. You must .... (listening) to the teacher during lessons.
3. As I .... (read) my book, the phone rang.
4. I was watching a TV programme when my father .... (comes) .

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I <u>fall</u> down while I was running. (..................)
2. SB In a museum, you <u>must</u> touch the objects. (..................)
3. What <u>you must</u> do before your exams ? (..................)
4. WB Most of the people <u>slept</u> when the earthquake started. (..................)

E. Writing

7 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

نجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A historic place you visited"

SB pages 44-53 WB pages 102-108

Unit 5 Helping you, helping me



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; A Little Princess; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project
- **Writing :**
  A blog post on how to help your community
- **Listening :**
  Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions
- **Speaking :**
  A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions
- **Language :**
  who, which, that, where
- **Life Skills :**
  Participation; Collaboration
- **Values :**
  Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness
- **Issues :**
  Community participation

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة.
• ملحق المهارات.

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47 WB pages 102 & 103



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cooking (n)	الطبخ	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
tidying up (n)	ترتيب - تنظيم (الأشياء)	fantastic (adj)	رائع
washing up (n)	غسل (الأوانى)	smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم - ابتسامة
taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة	distance (n)	مسافة
putting away my clothes	وضع ملابسى فى مكانها المعتاد	messy (adj)	فوضوى (غير مرتب)
looking after my brother	الاعتناء بأخى	random (adj)	عشوائى (غير مقصود)
kindness (n)	حسن المعاملة - طيبة / عطف	apartment	شقة سكنية

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

teenager (n)	مراهق	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
bedroom (n)	حجرة نوم	schoolbag (n)	حقيبة المدرسة
during (prep)	أثناء / خلال	sort (n)	نوع
turns (n)	أدوار	model (n)	نموذج
meals (n)	وجبات	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
koushari (n)	وجبة الكشرى	sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمسية
lift (n)	مصعد (أسانسير)	stairs (n)	درجات السُلم
floor (n)	طابق - أرضية	attic (n)	غرفة علوية
clothes (n)	ملابس	project (n)	مشروع
dolphin (n)	درفيل (حيوان بحرى)		

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

alone (adv)	بمفرده	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط / خطة
address (n)	عنوان	care (d) (v), (n)	يهتم - عناية / اهتمام
rest (n)	راحة	shape (n)	شكل
carry (ied) (v)	يحمل	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
shopkeeper (n)	صاحب متجر / محل تجارى	surprised (adj)	مندهش

test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر / اختبار	seat (n)	مقعد
acts (n)	أفعال / أعمال	check (ed) (v)	يتدقق - يفحص
Random Acts of Kindness Day (n)		advertisement (n)	إعلان
	يوم أفعال الخير غير المخططة (العشوائية)	tips (n)	نصائح
practise (d) (v)	يمارس / يتدرب	follow (ed)	يتبع
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	thief (n)	لص

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
find	يجد	found	found
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
tidy	مرتب	messy / untidy	غير مرتب / فوضوى
full	ممتلىء	empty	فارغ - خالٍ
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	get off	ينزل من (وسيلة مواصلات)
heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
borrow	يستعير	lend	يسلف / يقرض
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

bin	a place for rubbish	سلة مهملات
fantastic	extremely good; excellent	رائع
give back	return something to someone	يعيد
kindness	• the quality صفة of being kind, generous, helpful and caring towards other people • when you do things to help others and show that you care about them	حسن المعاملة / العطف / الطيبة

make friends	become friends with someone for the first time	يكون صداقات
messy	not tidy / very untidy	فوضوي (غير مرتب)
put away	put something in the place where you usually keep it when you are not using it	يضع شيء في مكانه المعتاد
random	• done or happening by chance and not according to any plan • happening without a plan	عشوائي
run after	run quickly to catch or stop someone or something	يلحق
shopkeeper	a person who owns and runs a shop	صاحب المحل
smile	• the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy	ابتسامة
stranger	a person you do not know	شخص غريب
tidy up	make a place look better by putting things in their correct places	ترتيب الأشياء
lift	• a machine that carries people up or down in a tall building	المصعد (الأسانسير)

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

Hala : I'm Hala. I have to make my bed[1] every day and tidy up my bedroom[2] once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy[3] I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time[4]. I have to put away all my clothes.



Check Vocabulary

(1) ارتب سريري	(2) أرتب حجرة النوم
(3) فوضوي	(4) يستغرق وقت طويل

Munir : My name's Munir. During[6] the week, my sister and I take turns[6] to wash up[7] after meals[8]. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking[9]. I love making koushari.



Adam : I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out our rubbish[10]. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full[11]. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment[12] is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift[13]. The bins are heavy when they are full!



Nader : I sometimes have to look after my brother[14] after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack[15] to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready for school and I make sure he has the right[16] books.



Check Vocabulary

قا	(6) يتبادل الأدوار	(7) يغسل الأواني	(8) وجبات	(9) يطبخ	(10) يخرج القمامة
ملو	(12) شقة سكنية	(13) مصعد (أسانسير)	(14) أعتني بأخي	(15) وجبة خفيفة	(16) مناسب/صحيح

Reading

on lesson 1 WB page 102

We're going on a boat[1] today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses[2] and a hat. Boats are fun[3] but they can be dangerous[4]. Dina uses a wheelchair[5], so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving, but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin, you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

Check Vocabulary

قارب	(2) نظارة شمسية	(3) متعة	(4) خطير	(5) كرسى متحرك

Listening

• On Lesson 2 SB page 46



Aya : The girl looks sad to be alone[1]. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget[2] how it feels[3] when you start school. They should try to make friends[4] with her.



Samir : A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back[5] to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address[6].



Aya : The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest[7]. They should take the children outside and play with them.



Samir : She shouldn't carry[8] all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بمفرده	(2) ينسى	(3) يشعر	(4) يكون صداقات
(5) يستعيد الحقيبة	(6) عنوان	(7) يأخذ قسطًا من الراحة	(8) يحمل

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 47

Random[1] acts[2] of kindness[3]



In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better[4]. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down[5] her idea : Practise[6] random acts of kindness.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عشوائي	(2) أفعال	(3) طيبة / عطف	(4) يجعل العالم أفضل	(5) يدون	(6) يمارس

A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason[7]. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know, for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers[8], for example, give your seat[9] to someone on a bus. Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile[10] on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic[11] idea ?

Quick Vocabulary

[illegible]	(8) أشخاص غرباء	(9) مقعد	(10) ابتسامة	(11) رائع

... on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Do you want to start running[1]?

Follow[2] these tips[3]!

- Start running short distances[4].
- Don't run too far, but go a bit further[5] each day.
- Go with a friend if you can-it will help!
- Don't run if your legs hurt[6].
- Drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
- Eat healthy[7] food.
- Don't eat a lot of sweets.



Quick Vocabulary

(1) الجري	(2) يتبع	(3) نصائح	(4) مسافات	(5) أبعد قليلًا	(6) يؤلم	(7) صحي

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes — الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
lift	تستخدم كاسم بمعنى مصعد (أسانسير) أو توصيلة (بالسيارة مثلًا)	– Can I take the lift to go down to the second floor ? – I got a lift from my old friend today.
lift	تستخدم أيضًا كفعل بمعنى يرفع	– I can't lift this heavy bag.

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف الجر

Expression	Meaning	Example
tidy up (a room)	يرتب غرفة	– I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. (SB page 45)
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد	– I put all my things away every night.
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	– During the week, my sister and I take turns to wash up. (SB page 45)
take out	يخرج (شيء)	– My most difficult job is taking out our rubbish. (SB page 45)
get ready for ...	يستعد لـ ... / يجهز لـ ...	– He has to get his bag ready for school. (SB page 45)
do the cooking	يطبخ	– I help my grandmother to do the cooking. (SB page 45)
go down to ...	ينزل أو يصل إلى	– I have to go down to the street on the lift. (SB page 45)
run after give ... back	يلحق يعيد شيئًا	– Someone should run after him and give the bag back. (SB page 46)
make the world better	يجعل العالم أفضل	– Some friends wanted to make the world better. (SB page 47)
on time	في الوقت المحدد	– At school, I have to arrive on time. (WB page 102)
have a smile	لديه ابتسامة	– Karim is a happy person and always has a smile on his face! (WB page 103)
care about	يهتم بـ	– Our parents care about us more than anyone.
have a reason	لديه سبب / مُبرر	– You don't have to have a good reason to do a random act of kindness. (SB page 47)
practise random acts of kindness	يمارس / يقوم بأعمال خير غير مخططة (عشوائية)	– You should practise random acts of kindness to old people in your town.

go on a boat	يذهب في رحلة بالمركب	- We're going on a boat today. *(WB page 103)*
for no reason	بدون سبب / هدف	- A random act of kindness is a kind thing you do for someone, for no reason. *(SB page 47)*
make a model for ...	يعد / يصنع / نموذج لـ	- The teacher told the students to tidy up after they made a model for the project. *(WB page 102)*

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. What's the .... between Cairo and Alexandria ? It's 216 km.
   a. distance b. tidying up c. stairs d. washing up
2. Mum made a cake. It tastes .... I like it very much
   a. terrible b. fantastic c. horrible d. bad
3. He asks about directions. He looks a / an .... to this part of the city.
   a. shopkeeper b. stranger c. act d. waiter
4. Munir has to .... up the dishes after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays.
   a. wash b. tidy c. look d. take
5. A .... act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason.
   a. messy b. surprised c. random d. lucky
6. The teacher told the students to .... up after they made a model for the project.
   a. do b. tidy c. make d. take
7. Ali has to .... his toys away when he's finished playing with them.
   a. take b. put c. go d. make

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. WB The police ran after the .... when they saw him leaving the bank.
   a. customer b. thief c. shopkeeper d. manager
9. WB Adam knew everyone in the village, so he was .... when a stranger walked into his shop.
   a. random b. light c. full d. surprised
10. WB It's going to be hot, so you have to wear .... and a hat.
    a. coat b. glasses c. umbrella d. sunglasses
11. SB Random means happening without a ....
    a. plane b. plant c. plan d. panel

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

12. We have .... between meals.
    a. lunch b. dinner c. breakfast d. snacks
13. Put a / an .... in the newspaper to sell your flat.
    a. purse b. choice c. advertisement d. village
14. We took the .... down to the ground floor.
    a. left b. slide c. lift d. distance
15. He is still a/an .... He is only 14 years.
    a. kid b. parent c. adult d. teenager

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. Run .... means to run quickly to catch or stop someone or something.
    a. at b. away c. after d. forward
17. They should .... friends with her as she is nice.
    a. take b. make c. go d. have
18. We should care .... our environment.
    a. to b. around c. out d. about

III Language

Necessity التعبير عن الضرورة

have to / has to يجب أن / من الضروري أن / لابد أن

We use (have to / has to) to talk about things that other people say are necessary.

نستخدم (have to / has to) للحديث عن الأشياء التى يعتبرها الناس ضرورية (إلزام خارجى).

1 Affirmative الإثبات

I/We/You/They (اسم جمع)	+	have to + inf.
He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	+	has to + inf.

ex. - SB I have to walk to school. تعبر عن الضرورة فى المضارع

2 Negative النفى

I/We/You/They (اسم جمع)	+	don't have to + inf.
He / She / It (اسم مفرد)	+	doesn't have to + inf.

ex. - SB My mother doesn't have to go to work today because it's a holiday. تعبر عن عدم الضرورة فى المضارع

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

1. Yes / No questions : ١. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Do + (I – We – they – you) / (اسم جمع) + have to + inf. .... ?

ex. - Do you have to finish your work tonight ?
- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't.

Does + (he - she - it) / (اسم مفرد) + have to + inf. .... ?

ex. - Does Bassem have to travel to Hurghada ?
- Yes, he does.
- No, he doesn't.

2. Wh - questions : ٢. السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + do / does + subject + have to .... ?

ex. - When do you have to arrive at work ?
- Where does Rahma have to put her clothes ?

لاحظ استخدام (have to) بعد do أو does فى صيغة الاستفهام.

Remember تذكر

Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن
نستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should — shouldn't

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. ..... (المصدر)

● ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شىء جيد أو مفيد»

ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. ..... (المصدر)

● لا ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شىء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and sweets.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

1. Yes / No questions : : ١. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. - Should we eat lots of fish ?
- Yes, you should.
- No, you shouldn't.

2. Wh - questions : : ٢. السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. - What should I eat ?
- You should eat fruit and vegetables.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB My father .... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
a. has to b. have to c. don't have to d. haven't

2. SB At the weekends, I .... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.
a. don't have to b. not have to c. don't have d. have not to

3. WB You don't have .... out the rubbish, I did it this morning.
a. take b. takes c. taking d. to take

4. WB You .... start running short distances.
a. shouldn't b. should c. couldn't d. mustn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. You shouldn't .... if your legs hurt.
   a. runs   b. running   c. to run   d. run
6. Does your best friend .... walk to school ?
   a. has to   b. haven't to   c. have to   d. hasn't to
7. Should I drink lots of water after a run ? – Yes, you ....
   a. shouldn't   b. should   c. couldn't   d. can't
8. What game do you have .... ?
   a. practised   b. practising   c. to practise   d. practise
9. It's clear صافية today, so we .... take our umbrellas.
   a. don't have to   b. not have to   c. don't have   d. have not to

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB Do you have to walks to school ? (................)
2. WB You should eat a lot of sweets. (................)
3. WB You doesn't have to sit when the boat stops. (................)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. What does you have to do after school ? (................)
5. Does Mona have to ride a bike ? - No, she hasn't. (................)
6. Have I do exercise every day ? - Yes, you should. (................)
7. You should drive your car fast. (................)
8. What should I doing to pass the exam ? (................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Hoda .... (have) to wear a uniform.
2. Does Nader .... (has) to get up early ?
3. I .... (haven't) to drive fast.
4. Hala .... (don't) have to study for exams.
5. What .... (you have) to do ?

IV Speaking Corner

1 A discussion about jobs in the house — مناقشة عن الوظائف في المنزل

Do you have to do jobs at home? هل أنت مضطر لأداء وظائف في المنزل؟	Yes, I have to do some jobs at home. نعم، أنا مضطر لأداء بعض الوظائف في المنزل.
What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ? ما نوع الأعمال التي يجب عليك القيام بها في المنزل ؟	– I have to do the washing up, tidying up and looking after my little sister. يجب علي غسل الأواني وترتيب الحجرات والاعتناء بأختي الصغيرة.

2 Discussing random acts of kindness — مناقشة الأعمال الخيرية العشوائية (الغير مخطط لها)

Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness ? Why ? هل تعتقد أن الناس يجب عليهم أن يقوموا دوما بأعمال الخير الغير مخطط لها ؟ لماذا ؟	– Yes, I think so because we should all do acts of kindness like helping the poor. نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنه ينبغي علينا أن نقوم جميعا بأعمال الخير مثل مساعدة الفقراء
What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day ? ماذا تود أن تفعل في يوم أعمال الخير الغير مخطط لها ؟	– I'd like to give my seat in the bus to older people. أود أن أعطي مقعدي في الأتوبيس إلى كبار السن

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى

«Jobs to do at home وظائف للقيام بها فى المنزل»

1. I help my mum do the washing up, the cooking and making beds.
   ١ أساعد والدتى فى غسل الأوانى والطبخ وترتيب الأسرّة
2. My most difficult job at home is taking out our rubbish.
   ٢ التخلص من القمامة هو أصعب مهمة أقوم بها فى المنزل
3. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full.
   ٣ لست مضطرًا لفعل ذلك يوميًا، فقط عندما تمتلئ السلال

General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

(استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Where are you going today ? ....
   a. On a boat b. On a bus
   c. On a ride d. On a plane
2. What is the weather like today ? ....
   a. Warm b. Hot c. Windy d. Cold
3. What do we have to wear ? ....
   a. Hat b. Sunglasses c. Hat and sunglasses d. Jacket
4. What can you see in the streets ? ....
   a. Boats b. Cars c. Ships d. Bikes

2 SB Complete the following dialogue :

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?
Omar : (1) .... I have a geography test tomorrow.
Nasser : What about your brother ? (2) .... ?
Omar : No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom.
Nasser : Where do we have to go for the next lesson ?
Omar : (3) ....
Nasser : The laboratory ! (4) .... ?
Omar : Yes, we have science in the next lesson.
Nasser : (5) .... ?
Omar : Yes, I am good at science.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB This book is .... You should read it.
   a. boring b. fantastic c. terrible d. bad
2. SB It's a .... today. We don't have to go to school.
   a. washing b. snack c. holiday d. game

3. WB Please, can you .... back the book you borrowed ?
   a. take　　b. give　　c. make　　d. spend
4. SB .... means something is happening without a plan.
   a. Random　　b. Full　　c. Friendly　　d. Tidy
5. I'm very .... to have such good parents.
   a. lucky　　b. unlucky　　c. lazy　　d. active
6. A .... is the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy.
   a. kindness　　b. smile　　c. cooking　　d. washing up
7. He couldn't walk easily. He needs a ....
   a. boat　　b. hat　　c. wheelchair　　d. chair
8. You .... drink lots of water after you do sports.
   a. should　　b. can　　c. shouldn't　　d. must
9. My father is a doctor so he .... work at night.
   a. has to　　b. have to　　c. hasn't to　　d. haven't to
10. Does she .... get up early on Fridays ?
   a. has　　b. have　　c. have to　　d. has to

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. If you don't understand the lesson, you <u>shouldn't</u> ask your teacher. (..............................)
2. What do you have to <u>doing</u> at home ? (..............................)
3. He <u>have</u> to go to school on time. (..............................)
4. You shouldn't <u>to eat</u> too many sweets. (..............................)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb / word in brackets :

1. What .... (have Nabil) to get for the trip ?
2. I have to .... (listening) carefully.
3. When .... (have you to) to arrive ?
4. He .... (has not) to speak loudly.
5. They .... (have not to) buy milk.

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 48 - 50 WB pages 104 & 105

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

volunteer (n)	متطوع	servant (n)	خادم / خادمة
pick (ed) up (v)	يلتقط	behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	beggar (n)	متسول
feed (v)	يُطعم	community (n)	مجتمع / جماعة
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	disabled (adj)	عاجز / مقعد
cruel (adj)	قاسي		

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع	reach (ed) (v)	يصل
neighbour (n)	جار	sick (adj)	مريض
pass (ed) (v)	يمر / يجتاز	identify (ied) (v)	يتعرف على
maths exams (n)	اختبارات رياضيات	present (n)	هدية
maths teacher (n)	معلم رياضيات	café (n)	مقهى
schoolbooks (n)	كتب مدرسية	camel (n)	جمل
secondary school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	local (adj)	محلي
trainers (n)	حذاء رياضي	temple (n)	معبد
volleyball team (n)	فريق الكرة الطائرة	market (n)	سوق
match (n)	مباراة	watch (n)	ساعة يد

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

princess (n)	أميرة	ending (n)	نهاية
die (d) (v)	يموت	directions (n)	اتجاهات
headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
generous (adj)	كريم / سخي	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
strange (adj)	غريب	coin (n)	عملة معدنية
certain (adj)	مؤكد / معين	baker (n)	خباز
role (n)	دور	recommend (ed)	يوصي / يزكي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet	يقابل	met	met
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	فظيع / سيئ
useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد
polite	مهذب	rude = impolite	غير مهذب

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

cruel	not kind	قاسى
boarding school	a school where the students can live all the time (during the school year)	مدرسة داخلية
behave	act or do something in a certain way	يتصرف / يسلك
beggar	• a poor person who lives by asking other people for money or food	متسول
servant	a person who works in a house, cooking, cleaning ..., etc.	خادم / خادمة
community	a small area and the people who live in it	مجتمع / جماعة
disabled	• when someone can't use a part of the body in the way most people can • not able to use part of the body well, often after an injury or disease	معاق
donate	• give something useful to a person or charity that needs help	يتبرع
feed	• give money, food, clothes, etc. to help a person or an organisation give food to a person or animal	يُطعم
pick up	• lift someone or something • collect something from a place	يلتقط / يجمع
princess	the daughter of a king or queen	أميرة

11 Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Amal : Our neighbour(1), Mr Othman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams(2). He is 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher(3) before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks(4) from when he was teaching at secondary school(5).

My aunt Dalia is a person who is always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers(6) that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team(7) for the first time. We won the match(8)!

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch(9). I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday(10). The place where I lost it was the kitchen(11). I took it off(12) when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under the plant(13). Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach(14) the watch.



Mr Othman



Aunt Dalia



Rana







Check Vocabulary

(1) جار	(2) اجتاز امتحانات الرياضيات	(3) معلم رياضيات	(4) كتب مدرسية	(5) مدرسة ثانوية
(6) حذاء رياضى	(7) فريق الكرة الطائرة	(8) مباراة	(9) ساعة يد	(10) عيد ميلاد
(11) مطبخ	(12) يخلع ساعة اليد	(13) نبات	(14) يصل إلى	

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 49



I work as a volunteer[1] for a charity[2] which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up[3] the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Samir



It is good to help people in the community[4]. I visit a home for old people who are disabled[5] so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.

Fatma



I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick[6] and cannot work any more. People donate[7] money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed[8] the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.

Ahmed

Check Vocabulary

(1) متطوع	(2) جمعية خيرية	(3) يلتقط	(4) مجتمع
(5) مُقعد / عاجز	(6) مريض	(7) يتبرع	(8) يطعم

• on Lesson 4 SB page 50



A Little[1] Princess[2]

by Frances Hodgson Burnett.

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school[3] calls her "a little princess" because her father is very rich[4]. After Sara's father dies[5], the headteacher[6], Miss Minchin, starts being cruel[7] to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant[8]. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to[9] behave[10] like a real princess, so she is always kind and polite[11] to everyone.

One day, Sara finds a coin in the street. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar[12] and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous[13] like this. When the baker[14] sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange[15]. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صغير السن	(2) أميرة	(3) مدرسة داخلية	(4) غنى	(5) يموت	(6) مدير المدرسة	(7) قاس	
(8) خادم	(9) يقرر أن	(10) يسلك / يتصرف	(11) مؤدب	(12) متسول / شحات	(13) كريم / سخى	(14) خباز	(15) غريب

• on Lesson 4 WB page 105



I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant[1], because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough[2] to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar[3] in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised[4]. I feel that this servant girl behaved[5] like a princess!

Check Vocabulary

(1) خادم	(2) كاف	(3) متسول - شحات	(4) مندهش	(5) يتعامل / يتصرف

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
take off	تقلع الطائرة	– The plane takes off at 7:00 tomorrow morning.
take .... off	يخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)	– I took my watch off when I was playing. *(SB page 48)*
cruel to	قاس تجاه / على ...	– Miss Minchin starts being cruel to Sara because she has no money. *(SB page 50)*
polite to	مهذب تجاه / مع ...	– Sara is always kind and polite to everyone. *(SB page 50)*
come out	يخرج / يظهر	– When she comes out, she sees a beggar. *(SB page 50)*
come into	يدخل	– I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant. *(WB page 105)*
ask for money	يطلب مال	– A beggar is a poor person who asks others for money. *(SB page 50)*
ask for directions	يسأل عن الاتجاهات	– I ask for directions when I get lost in the city.
act out	يمثل	– Try to act out the whole story in front of the class.
left behind	يترك خلفه	– We go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. *(SB page 49)*
volunteer for	متطوع لـ	– People who are volunteers for a charity help their communities. *(SB page 49)*

get lost	يضل الطريق	– The market is the place where I often get lost! (WB page 104)
recommend to	يوصى بـ	– What's the name of a film that you always recommend to your friends? (WB page 104)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is a small area and the people who live in it.
   a. volunteer b. community c. environment d. temple
2. Our company has .... more than 20000 LE to the charities.
   a. behaved b. contained c. donated d. lost
3. That man is .... and he needs a wheelchair.
   a. well b. disabled c. cruel d. brave
4. The .... school is a school where children can live there.
   a. high b. abroad c. boarding d. private
5. He works as a .... for a charity.
   a. customer b. volunteer c. headteacher d. tourist
6. Always be friendly and don't be .... to others.
   a. cruel b. helpful c. careful d. useful
7. If a child .... well, he / she is good.
   a. donates b. happens c. behaves d. comes

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. WB I need to buy some vegetables but the .... is the place where I often get lost!
   a. museum b. market c. park d. school

9. The .... where I meet my friends sells delicious ice-cream.
   a. café b. temple c. library d. post office

10. The .... is the daughter of a king or a queen.
   a. prince b. ruler c. maid d. princess

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. Can you .... the meaning of community ?
   a. lift b. guess c. donate d. feed

12. He is .... He gives poor people more money than usual.
   a. polite b. genius c. dirty d. generous

13. We buy .... from the school to study them in the class.
   a. schoolbooks b. storybooks c. notebooks d. bookcases

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. When I .... lost, I ask for directions.
   a. come b. look c. get d. have

15. We usually go to the beach and pick .... the rubbish.
   a. out b. up c. for d. at

16. I'd like to work .... a volunteer.
   a. to b. as c. at d. in

III Language

Remember تذكر

Relative clauses / pronouns جمل وضمائر الوصل

Formation التكوين

(who / that / which / where)

جمل الوصل هى الجملة التى تبدأ بإحدى ضمائر الوصل والتى تستخدم لتوضيح ما تتحدث عنه سواء كان (شخص، شئ أو مكان) :

who / that (الذى / التى / الذين)	- تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى (الذى / التى) مع الأشخاص (العاقل) : Mr Zaki is the teacher who / that helped me the most when I started at this school.
which / that (الذى / التى / الذين)	- تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى (الذى / التى) مع غير العاقل (الجماد والحيوان) : The present that / which I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.
where حيث (للمكان)	- تستخدم ضمير الوصل (where) بمعنى (حيث) مع الأماكن : Alexandria is the city where both my big sisters are studying.
where = حرف جر + which = which + حرف جر	- تستخدم (where) مع المكان ولا يأتى بعدها فعل، ولاحظ الآتى : I don't want to leave the house where I was born. I don't want to leave the house in which I was born. I don't want to leave the house which I was born in.
	لاحظ تستخدم (which) فقط وليس (where) عند وصف المكان This is the villa which we have bought. (Not : where we have bought ...)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB I saw Ahmed in the park .... we often play football.
   a. what b. which c. where d. who
2. SB You left the bag .... you bought at the weekend at my house!
   a. that b. who c. where d. when
3. SB Mrs Sabri's the teacher .... taught my sister.
   a. which b. when c. who d. where
4. WB This is the museum .... the school visited last year.
   a. who b. which c. when d. where
5. WB The person .... is sitting next to me is called Tarek.
   a. whose b. who c. when d. which

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This is the school .... we learn.
   a. where b. which c. who d. when
7. She wanted to buy a scarf .... would match her blue dress.
   a. which b. where c. who d. when
8. The students .... did their best were not the ones who played all the time.
   a. when b. who c. where d. what
9. She prefers to watch movies .... make her cry.
   a. who b. where c. when d. which
10. Mr Ayman is the teacher .... helps me a lot.
    a. where b. when c. that d. whose
11. I visited the temple .... there are many statues.
    a. what b. that c. where d. who

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

1. The boy which was my best friend at school moved to a different city. (..................)
2. I work for a charity where looks after animals. (..................)
3. I love the trainers where are blue and red. (..................)

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

4. The desert is a place when we don't find plants. (..................)
5. Omar is the boy where can run fast. (..................)
6. Youssef likes the house who he was born in. (..................)
7. Cairo is the city which I was born. (..................)
8. This is the place when cars can park. (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of relative pronouns in brackets :

1. This is the man .... (which) won the prize.
2. Is this the car .... (who) you bought ?
3. Benha is the town .... (which) I was born.
4. That's the teacher .... (which) teaches us English.

IV Speaking Corner

Talking about voluntary work : الحديث عن العمل التطوعى

Questions	Answers
1. What are some other ways we can help in the community ? ١. ما هى بعض الطرق الأخرى التى يمكننا من خلالها مساعدة المجتمع ؟	We can help to clean our local beaches, help the disabled whose families can't look after them. يمكننا المساعدة فى تنظيف شواطئنا المحلية ومساعدة ذوى الإعاقة الذين لا يمكن لعائلاتهم أن ترعاهم.
2. Which charity work would you like to do ? Why ? ٢. ما العمل الخيرى الذى تود القيام به ؟ ولماذا ؟	I like working as a volunteer for a charity which helps old people because those people really need help. أحب العمل كمتطوع فى مؤسسة خيرية تساعد كبار السن لأن هؤلاء الأشخاص يحتاجون المساعدة حقًا.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى

«Working for a charity العمل فى مؤسسة خيرية»

1. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean local beaches.

١. أنا أعمل كمتطوع فى جمعية خيرية تساعد فى تنظيف الشواطئ المحلية.

2. We go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind at the weekend.

٢. نذهب إلى الشاطئ ونقوم بجمع القمامة التى تركها الناس خلفهم فى العطلة الأسبوعية.

3. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles.

٣. دائمًا ما نجمع كثير من الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

4. Many people help us, some of them work with us. Others donate money for the charity.

٤. كثير من الأشخاص يساعدونا. بعض منهم يعمل معنا والبعض الآخر يقدم تبرعات مالية للجمعية

General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

(استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mr Othman is our ....
   a. neighbour b. teacher c. farmer d. engineer
2. Mr Othman helped me pass my .... exams.
   a. geography b. history c. maths d. English
3. Mr Othman was teaching at a ....
   a. secondary school b. nursery
   c. primary school d. preparatory school
4. The books he used to help me were his old ....
   a. adventures b. school books c. stories d. plays

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : Where do you spend your weekend ?
B : (1) ....
A : What do you do at that charity ?
B : (2) ....
A : (3) .... ?
B : We give them money and things they need.
A : (4) .... ?
B : Yes, there are many disabled old people.
A : (5) .... ?
B : Yes, it is. It gives you pleasure when you help people in need.
A : Can I join this charity with you ?
B : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB On the beach, we always .... up lots of plastic bottles.
   a. do b. take c. make d. pick
2. .... people usually do bad things to others.
   a. Foreign b. Clever c. Cruel d. Kind

3. He studies hard to .... his exams.
a. get b. pass c. press d. leave

4. Choose a .... to play from the story characters.
a. role b. rule c. bag d. watch

5. A .... is someone who can't use a part of the body in the way most people can.
a. volunteer b. waiter c. customer d. disabled

6. Which car do you .... me to buy ? - The black one.
a. decide b. recommend c. try d. invite

7. They will go to the club .... they practise swimming.
a. who b. when c. where d. that

8. I saw a .... in the street and helped him with some money.
a. bigger b. beggar c. thief d. foreigner

9. I gave the shoes .... are too small for me to my cousin.
a. where b. who c. when d. which

10. Nancy is the person .... is sitting next to me.
a. who b. which c. where d. when

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The present where I bought for my grandmother is in my bag. (..........)
2. That's the hotel which I stayed last week. (..........)
3. Is that the teacher which taught you last year ? (..........)
4. That can't be the picture who you drew. (..........)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of relative pronouns in brackets :

1. I don't know .... (which) you mean.
2. This is the boys'room from .... (where) you hear the noise.
3. Is this the girl .... (which) won the cup ?
4. Those are the boys .... (when) broke the window.
5. Maths is a subject .... (who) I find difficult.

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"Charity work you like most"

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

donation (n)	تبرع	passport (n)	جواز سفر
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
share (d) (v)	يشارك / يتقاسم	blog (n)	مدونة
opinion (n)	رأى		

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	decision (n)	قرار
possible (adj)	ممكن / محتمل	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	perhaps (adv)	ربما
newspaper article (n)	مقال فى جريدة	donate (d) (n)	يتبرع

Numbers الأرقام

100,000 = one hundred thousand	مائة ألف
1,500 = one thousand, five hundred	ألف وخمسمائة
10,300 = ten thousand, three hundred	عشرة آلاف وثلاثمائة
1,000,000 = one million	مليون
1,600,000 = one million, six hundred thousand	مليون وستمائة ألف

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

canteen (n)	كانتين (مقصف)	geography (n)	مادة الجغرافيا
cold drink (n)	مشروب مثلج	break (n)	راحة - فسحة
sandwich (n)	ساندوتش	laboratory (n)	المعمل
street corner	ركن /ناصية الشارع	sunny (adj)	مشمس



exciting (adj)	مثير / شيق	Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge	كوبري محور روض الفرج
surprising events	أحداث مدهشة	wide (adj)	واسع
exclamation mark (n)	علامة تعجب	snow (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر ثلج - ثلج
pleased (adj)	مسرور	helpful (adj)	مساعد / متعاون
twice	مرتين		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
give	يعطي	gave	given
let	يسمح	let	let

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
large	كبير (الحجم)	small	صغير (الحجم)
usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
soft	ناعم	hard	صلب - جامد
agree	يوافق	disagree	يعارض

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

1. two million
2. twelve thousand
3. one million, five hundred thousand
4. two million, ten thousand

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51



Amal : I think that the charities should share[1] the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila : I'm not sure[2], Amal.... I think it would be better[3] if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important[4].

Amal : OK, but which charity then ?

Leila : What about[5] a charity that helps children ... or old people ?

Amal : I agree[6] that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest[7] that they share the money.

Leila : I see what you mean[8]. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يشارك	(2) أنا غير متأكد	(3) من الأفضل	(4) هام / مهم
(5) ماذا عن / ما رأيك فى ...؟	(6) يوافق	(7) يقترح	(8) فهمت ماذا تقصد

Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Large charity donation[1]



• Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated two million[2] pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman[3] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide[4] to share the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تبرع	(2) مليون	(3) سيدة أعمال	(4) يقرر

Videoscript on Lesson 5 SB page 51

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people. The Alhassan Foundation[1] helps disabled people. They give wheelchairs[2] to people who cannot walk. The charity helps disabled people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled[3] people have to live.

Another charity is the Egyptian Food Bank[4] which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help. People can also donate food. Such as pasta[5], rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community[6].

The Red Crescent[7] is one of the most important charities in the world. A lot of doctors and nurses volunteer for this charity. They treat ill and injured people when there is a natural disaster.

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of damage and many people needed help. The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people. Everybody should donate to a charity if they can. Or perhaps you could volunteer to help ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مؤسسة	(2) كراسى متحركة	(3) معاق	(4) بنك الطعام المصرى	(5) مكرونة	(6) مجتمع	(7) الهلال الأحمر

on Lesson 5 WB page 106



Malak : I feel that famous people should work for a charity[1] at the weekend.

Rawia : I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for[2] a charity.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مؤسسة / جمعية خيرية	(2) يعمل لصالح

Malak : I agree that it's important for them to donate[3] money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia : OK, but when ? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak : I see what you mean. Perhaps[2] they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

Rawia : Good idea[1].

Check Vocabulary

(3) يتبرع | (2) ربما | (1) فكرة جيدة

- **on Lesson 6 SB page 52**

Hassan's blog

Random Acts of Kindness Project



- Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[1] in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner[2]. He gave me a big smile[3]. In my opinion[4], doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

Check Vocabulary

(1) مقصف المدرسة/ كانتين | (2) ركن / زاوية الشارع | (3) ابتسامة كبيرة | (4) فى رأيى

- **on Lesson 6 WB page 107**

My helpful day



- On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.

1. First, I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it!

2. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!
3. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on Saturday.
4. Then I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.
5. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy[1], so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. Twice[2] a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together[3] because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled people[4]. We think it is important to help people in the community[5].



Check Vocabulary

(1) فوضوى إلى حد ما	(2) مرتين	(3) معًا	(4) الأشخاص ذوى الإعاقة	(5) مجتمع

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar ?

Omar : Yes, I do. I have a geography test[1] tomorrow.

Nasser : What about your brother ? Does he have to study, too ?

Omar : No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom : it's really messy!

Nasser : It's nearly[2] the end of break[3]. Where do we have to go for the next lesson ?

Omar : The laboratory[4]! We've got science[5].

Check Vocabulary

(1) اختبار مادة الجغرافيا	(2) تقريبًا	(3) فسحة / راحة	(4) معمل	(5) مادة العلوم

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes ملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
without	تستخدم بمعنى «بدون» ويأتي بعدها noun / inf. + ing	– Life would be impossible without computer. – I can't leave without saying goodbye.
on (social media / the internet)	تستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل الكلمات التي تتعلق بـ الإنترنت	– You shouldn't spend too much time on social media.

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف الجر

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples
give away	يمنح - يهب	– When he got older, he gave all his money away.
make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات	– A. Can I make a suggestion? B. Sure.
give an opinion	يعطي رأي	– Can you give me your opinion about this book?
go back to	يعود إلى	– Let's go back to the beach where we go swimming.
I made my family happy.	لقد جعلت عائلتي سعيدة	– Finally, I made my family happy.
I see what you mean.	افهم ماذا تقصد	A. I think it's important to look after old people. B. OK. I see what you mean.

(SB page 3[illegible])

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. You can post anything about you on a .... on the internet.
   a. block b. blog c. log d. passport
2. It's important to have a .... when you travel to another country.
   a. suitcase b. laptop c. passport d. schoolbag
3. Would you like to make a/an .... to the nearest charity ?
   a. opinion b. donation c. presentation d. decision
4. Facebook is one of the most popular .... media websites.
   a. local b. magnetic c. social d. mixed

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. SB Fareeda Rashwan has .... two million pounds to charities in the city.
   a. made b. decided c. donated d. explained
6. SB Our class .... to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.
   a. decided b. broke c. gave d. completed
7. SB In my opinion, ... random acts of kindness is fantastic.
   a. taking b. making c. doing d. having
8. WB I .... that it's important for famous people to donate money.
   a. agree b. disagree c. refuse d. watch

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. We do experiments in the science lesson in the ....
   a. hall b. playground c. laboratory d. classroom
10. At school, we should buy foods and drinks from the ....
    a. playground b. laboratory c. hall d. canteen
11. There was a beggar on our street ....
    a. canteen b. corner c. museum d. laboratory

12. It's .... today. I should take my sunglasses.
    a. cold   b. rainy   c. snowy   d. sunny

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. He gave .... all of his money to charity before his death.
    a. in   b. to   c. away   d. off
14. I can't read .... my glasses.
    a. out   b. with   c. without   d. by
15. I have a big problem. Could you .... me your opinion ?
    a. make   b. do   c. take   d. give
16. Don't worry. I .... what you mean.
    a. have   b. see   c. read   d. spend

III Speaking Corner

1. Making suggestions

تقديم الاقتراحات

A : I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money.
- لست متأكدًا. أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن تحصل مؤسسة خيرية على كل الأموال.

B : I'm not sure. I think that the charities should share the money between them.
- أعتقد أن المؤسسات الخيرية لابد وأن تتقاسم الأموال فيما بينهم.

A : What about a charity that helps children ?
- ماذا عن مؤسسة خيرية تقوم بمساعدة الأطفال ؟

B : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people.
- أتفق معك على أنه من المهم جدًا مساعدة الأطفال، ولكن أعتقد أنه من المهم أيضًا الاعتناء بكبار السن.

A : Can you make a suggestion ?
- هل يمكنك أن تقدم اقتراح ؟

B : I suggest that the charities share the money.
- أقترح أن تتقاسم المؤسسات الخيرية الأموال.

A : I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between them. - افهم ماذا تقصد. حسنا ينبغي عليهم مشاركة الأموال فيما بينهم	B : This is what we try to do. - هذا ما نحاول القيام به

2. Expressions to give your opinion : **تعبيرات لإعطاء الرأى :**

- In my opinion , ... - فى رأى ....
- I feel that , ... - اشعر ان ....
- I agree that , ... - اتفق أن ....
- I think that , ... - أعتقد ان ....

3. Expressing understanding : **التعبير عن فهم الفكرة :**

- I see what you mean. - افهم ما تقصد.

4. Expressing probability : **التعبير عن الاحتمالية :**

- I'm not sure. - أنا غير متأكد.

5. Expressions for sequencing events : **تعبيرات تستخدم لترتيب الاحداث :**

- First, - أولاً
- Secondly, - ثانيا
- After that, - بعد ذلك
- Then, - ثم
- Finally, - أخيرًا

IV Writing

Writing tips! نصائح للكتابة

Remember to use exclamation marks (!) to show exciting, unusual or surprising events.

- تذكر أن تستخدم علامات التعجب (!) لتوضح الأحداث غير العادية أو المثيرة للدهشة.

Remember to give reasons for your opinion.

. تذكر أن تبدى أسبابًا لرأيك.

- A blog is like an online diary.
- Add a title to your blog (and a picture if you want).
- Use simple sentences.
- Review for spelling, grammar and punctuation.

. المدونة تبدو مثل مفكرة يومية على الإنترنت. اضف عنوان لمدونتك (وصورة لو تريد ذلك)

استخدم جمل بسيطة. راجع الإملاء والقواعد النحوية وعلامات الترقيم.

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

(Random Acts of kindness project)

1. Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.

١. قرر فصلنا محاولة القيام بعمل واحد خيرى كل يوم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.

2. First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes.

٢. أولاً، يوم الاثنين، اشتريت لجدتى بعض من الكيك المفضل لها.

3. She was surprised, but very happy!

٣. لقد كانت مندهشة ولكنها كانت سعيدة جدًا.

4. After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen in front of me.

٤. بعد ذلك، يوم الثلاثاء، سمحت لبعض الطلبة صغار السن بالدخول أمامى إلى كانتين المدرسة.

5. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to a poor, old man sitting on our street corner.

٥. أخيرًا، يوم الأربعاء، أخذت ساندوتش ومشروب بارد إلى رجل فقير كبير السن جالس على ناصية الشارع الخاص بنا.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What did you take to the old man ?
   a. A sandwich　　b. A cold drink
   c. A jacket　　d. a & b
2. When did you take these things to the old man ?
   a. Last Friday　　b. Last Wednesday
   c. Last Monday　　d. Last Sunday
3. Where did the old man sit ? – On the ....
   a. road　　b. ground　　c. street corner　　d. wheelchair
4. What did the old man do ?
   a. He gave me a big smile.　　b. He gave me foods.
   c. He gave me drinks.　　d. He gave me foods and drinks.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Basem : I'm getting too fat.
Baleegh : Yes, I think you got fat.
Basem : (1) .... ?
Baleegh : Why don't you start running ?
Basem : (2) .... How can I start ?
Baleegh : (3) ....
Basem : Short distances ! (4) .... ?
Baleegh : You can run for 15 minutes each day.
Basem : But what if my legs hurt ?
Baleegh : (5) ....
Basem : (6) .... ?
Baleegh : Food ? You should eat healthy food.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB My parents .... money to a charity which helps disabled people.
   a. leave　　b. teach　　c. donate　　d. lose

2. You can't leave your country without using your ....
   a. jacket b. passport c. laptop d. computer
3. Exclamation marks show exciting and .... events.
   a. usual b. normal c. unusual d. everyday
4. She does many big projects. She is a ....
   a. pilot b. businesswoman
   c. teacher d. clerk
5. Give me some advice to .... my family happy.
   a. take b. like c. make d. do
6. .... he is at home. I'm not sure.
   a. Perhaps b. Sure c. Recently d. After
7. I .... that it's very important to help poor people.
   a. thank b. agree c. disagree d. doubt
8. WB That is the house .... my grandmother was born.
   a. that b. who c. which d. where
9. SB History is a subject .... I find interesting, but difficult.
   a. who b. which c. when d. where
10. The lady .... lives next door is very friendly.
   a. who b. when c. which d. where

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The man <u>which</u> you spoke to is Mr Tarek. (................)
2. That's the watch <u>who</u> Omar gave me for my birthday. (................)
3. WB This is the charity <u>when</u> my family donates money to. (................)
4. We bought a flat <u>where</u> is near our school. (................)

5 Write an email of NINETY (90) words :

الإجابة في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Hany to tell him about random acts of kindness. Your name is Samy and your email address is samy@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

- 🔵 ممتاز
- 🟢 جيد جدا
- 🟡 جيد
- 🔴 غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ...... في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على

1 Learn important vocabulary اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- ☐ messy
- ☐ random
- ☐ kindness
- ☐ stranger
- ☐ cruel
- ☐ beggar
- ☐ smile
- ☐ community
- ☐ disabled
- ☐ boarding school
- ☐ behave
- ☐ servant

2 Read and write sentences using different forms of have to and relative pronouns.

أقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام الصيغ المختلفة لـ **(have to)** وضمائر الوصل.

- ☐ It's a busy day. We have to get some rest.
- ☐ At the weekends, I don't have to get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.
- ☐ The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks.
- ☐ My aunt Dalia is the person who is always very kind to me.

3 Talk about jobs in the house and make suggestions.

اتحدث عن أعمال المنزل وأقدم اقتراحات.

- ☐ I have to make my bed every day.
- ☐ I always tidy up once a week.
- ☐ What about a charity that helps children who are disabled ?
- ☐ Why don't we do one act of kindness every day ?

لمزيد من التدريبات • جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

REVIEW on unit 5

SB page 53 WB page 1..

1. Vocabulary

tidying up	ترتيب - تنظيم	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
washing up	غسل الأواني	cruel	قاسٍ
taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة	servant	خادم
putting away my clothes	وضع ملابسي في مكانها المعتاد	behave	يتصرف / يسلك
messy	فوضوي / غير مرتب	community	مجتمع
random	عشوائي	disabled	عاجز - معاق
smile	ابتسامة - يبتسم	businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
volunteer	متطوع	share	يشارك - يتقاسم
donate	يتبرع	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
donation	تبرع	geography	مادة الجغرافيا

2. Language

1. Relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل

(who - which - where)

- جملة + who الذى / التى / الذين «للعاقل» / which الذى / التى / الذين «لغيرالعاقل» + جملة
- باقى جملة + verb الفعل + subject الفاعل + where حيث «للمكان» + جملة

ex.: - This is **the man** who **lives** next door to Amgad.

- I need the **tool** which **is** next to the knife.
- This is **the place** where **Amgad** usually **works.**

2. Obligation and Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

Necessity	Lack of Necessity
• Subject + have to / has to + inf. - تستخدم عندما نتحدث عن قواعد وأشياء مهمة (عامة) يُوصى الآخرون باتباعها (إلزام خارجي) ex.: People have to get their passports before travelling to another country.	• Subject + doesn't have to / don't have to + (inf.) - نعبر عن شئ غير ضرورى أو أنت غير ملزم بفعله فى المضارع ex.: Today is Friday. I don't have to get up early.

3. Speaking

A discussion about jobs in the house : مناقشة عن الوظائف فى المنزل :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ?	– I have to do the washing up, tidying up and looking after my little sister.
Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness ? Why ?	– Yes, I think that because we should all do acts of kindness like helping the poor.
What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day ?	– I'd like to give my seat to older people.

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات / رسائل بريد إلكترونى هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

"Jobs at home"

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled people. We think it is important to help people in the community.

Writing Skill

مهــــارة الكتابــــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية و البريد الإلكترونى"

A Paragraph / An email on

➲ Jobs at home / Working for a charity / Random Acts of Kindness

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- What do you do to help in the house ?
- What do you want to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day ?
- What charities do you know ?
- Which charity work would you like to do ? Why ?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

jobs at home	kind
cooking	smile
putting away clothes	care about
taking out the rubbish	donate
tidying up	community
washing up	disabled
looking after my brother	beggar
Random Acts of Kindness	
working for a charity	

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I work as a .... for ....
- I have to do the .... at home.
- Put a smile on a person's face.
- I feel that I made .... happy.
- It's good to ....
- I don't have to ....
- I help to ....

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

➲ **Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

"Jobs at home"

....

....

....

....

....

Charity work & Jobs in the house project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن العمل الخيرى / الأعمال المنزلية



Objectives الأهداف

1. To identify jobs in the house — أن تتعرف على الأعمال المنزلية
2. To learn to do acts of kindness — أن تتعلم القيام بأعمال الخير
3. To help people in anyway — أن تساعد الناس بأى طريقة

Get started استعد

1. Do you practise random acts of kindness ?

١. هل مارست أفعال خير غير متوقعة (غير مخططة) ؟

2. How can volunteers help in the community ?

٢. كيف يساعد متطوعى الخير المجتمع ؟

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on charity work.

اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن العمل الخيرى.

OR Write a short paragraph on jobs at home.

أو اكتب فقرة قصيرة عن الأعمال المنزلية.

Support your paragraph using pictures. — ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

- *https ://www.ekb.eg — بنك المعرفة المصرى
- *The internet — الانترنت
- *Student's books — الكتب المدرسية

Test yourself unit 5

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Fareeda Rashwan is .... years old.
   a. 32 b. 33 c. 23 d. 22
2. Fareeda Rashwan is a / an ....
   a. engineer b. businesswoman
   c. businessman d. doctor
3. Fareeda donated two .... pounds to charities in her city.
   a. thousand b. hundred c. million d. billion
4. She wanted the charities to use the money to help ...., who need it.
   a. people b. animals c. things d. subjects

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ziad : Do you help your family at home ?
Marwan : Of course.
Ziad : (1) .... ?
Marwan : When I finish my study, (2) ....
Ziad : Washing up! Do you tidy up your room ?
Marwan : (3) ....
Ziad : You're very helpful. (4) .... ?
Marwan : I also look after my little sister and play with her.
Ziad : (5) .... ?
Marwan : My parents.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the passage then answer the questions :

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and **pick up** the rubbish that people left behind. They always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Fatma visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. She goes there after school on

Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who they visit and talk to. The woman who they visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. Fatma loves talking to **her**.

Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. They help to feed the animals and look after them. This camel is Ahmed's favourite animal.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a title for this passage.

....

2. What's your opinion about charities ?

....

3. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun **"her"** refers to ....
   a. Fatma b. Aya c. Mrs Nahal d. Sara
5. It isn't nice for people to .... on the beach.
   a. pick up rubbish b. help to clean
   c. leave rubbish d. pick up plastic bottles
6. The underlined word **"pick up"** means to .... something from a place.
   a. leave b. collect c. donate d. lend

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Although Sara is poor, she .... like a real princess.
   a. behaves b. decides c. makes d. lies
2. SB A .... act of kindness is what you do for someone for no reason.
   a. messy b. random c. lucky d. surprised
3. My parents like to .... money to a charity every month.
   a. win b. borrow c. spend d. donate

.... them all away.

4. WB My clothes are clean and dry, so I .... them all away.
   a. tidy b. wash c. put d. take
5. WB This book is .... You should read it.
   a. strange b. fantastic c. kind d. horrible
6. The .... between Alexandria and Port Said isn't short.
   a. date b. length c. distance d. place
7. Be helpful and .... the birds and animals regularly.
   a. send b. feed c. sell d. buy
8. WB That's the teacher .... teaches us maths.
   a. who b. which c. whose d. where
9. You .... play games. The exam is tomorrow.
   a. have to b. don't have to
   c. didn't have to d. doesn't have to
10. That's the city .... I was born.
   a. when b. why c. where d. which

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb / word in brackets :

1. My uncle .... (have to) get up early every day.
2. When you get on the bus, you have to .... (buying) a ticket.
3. Mr Sabri is the teacher .... (which) taught my sister.
4. The café .... (which) I meet my friends sells delicious pizza.

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You wouldn't watch too much TV. (........................)
2. WB At home, I have do my homework. (........................)
3. SB I work for a charity where looks after animals. (........................)
4. Do you have walking to school ? (........................)

7 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Helping others"

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 109:115

Unit 6 Different environments



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report
- **Writing :**
  A profile about where you live a paragraph on how to use less water a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate
- **Listening :**
  Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism
- **Speaking :**
  Solving environmental problems; Suggesting solutions to a problem
- **Language :**
  (not) as + adjective + as; Present simple passive
- **Life Skills :**
  Negotiating; problem solving
- **values :**
  Coexistence values
- **Issues :**
  Environmental and developmental issues : environmental responsibility, sustainable development.

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لاتقان الوحدة
• كراسة المعاصر للمتابعة.
• ملحق المهارات.

Lessons **1 & 2**



SB pages 54 : 57 WB pages 109 & 110

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
drought (n)	جفاف	polluted (adj)	ملوث
flood (n)	فيضان	changing (adj)	متغير / متقلب
rubbish (n)	قمامة / مخلفات	presentation (n)	عرض / تقديم
water pollution (n)	تلوث الماء	line graph (n)	خط بيانى
green (adj)	متعلق بالمحافظة على البيئة / ملائم للبيئة	bar chart (n)	رسم أو مخطط بيانى
environment (n)	البيئة		

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

report (ed) (v), (n)	يكتب تقرير / تقرير	comparison (n)	مقارنة
recently (adv)	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	radio news programme (n)	برنامج أخبارى إذاعى
warn (ed) (v)	يحذر		
electric (adj)	كهربى	attractive (adj)	جذاب
user (n)	مستخدم	comfortable (adj)	مريح
relaxing (adj)	يدعو للاسترخاء / مريح للأعصاب	fuel (n)	وقود
form (n)	نوع - شكل / نمط	transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات
volunteer (n)	متطوع		

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	cause (d) (v), (n)	يسبب - سبب
planet (n)	كوكب	electricity (n)	كهرباء
x-axis (n)	المحور السينى	conclusion (n)	خلاصة / استنتاج
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم

y-axis (n)	المحور الصادي	graph (n)	رسم بياني
area (n)	منطقة	serious (adj)	خطير
rainfall (n)	كمية الأمطار	prepare (d) (v)	يعد / يجهز
fires (n)	حرائق	average (n)	معدل / متوسط
melt (ed) (v)	يذيب / ينصهر	yearly (adj)	سنوي
ice (n)	ثلج / جليد	countryside (n)	الريف
recycling (n)	إعادة تدوير		

Continents, countries and cities قارات، دول ومدن

Australia	قارة / دولة أستراليا	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية
Iraq	دولة العراق	Jordan	دولة الأردن
Egypt	دولة مصر	Alexandria	مدينة الإسكندرية
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	Europe	قارة أوروبا

Famous places and rivers أماكن وأنهار مشهورة

Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو	The River Nile	نهر النيل
Mount Kenya	جبل كينيا	Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين
Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
usual	معتاد / عادى	unusual	غير معتاد
dry	جاف	wet	مبتل - ممطر
clean	نظيف	dirty / polluted	قذر / ملوث

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

air pollution	dirt and dangerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic تلوث الهواء
axis (x and y)	the lines that have numbers / information on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side) محور
bar chart	a diagram or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts مخطط بيانى
climate change	changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing تغير المناخ
drought	when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry الجفاف
flood	a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before فيضان
green	• connected to protecting the environment متعلق بالمحافظة على البيئة • good for the environment
line graph	a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to each other خط بيانى
melt	change from ice to water يذوب
polluted	made dirty or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things ملوث
serious	bad or dangerous enough to make you worried خطير

Listening and Reading

Listening

On Lesson 1 SB page 55



Girl : Hello, this is Jomana reporting for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently[1], volunteers[2] who were working to clean the River Nile[3] say they are finding more and more rubbish[4] in the water. They say the river is dirtier and more polluted[5] than ever before. They are warning[6] people who live in the city to be more careful[7] about where they put their rubbish to try to help the river become cleaner[8].

Boy : This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM. Today our city started using new electric[9] buses. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener[10]. The buses will mean there is less air pollution[11] in the city, and they are also cheaper[12] to run. I spoke to some bus users[13] who said that the new buses were quieter[14] than the old buses and also the seats[15] were more comfortable[16].

Check Vocabulary

حديثًا / مؤخرًا	(2) متطوعين	(3) نهر النيل	(4) مخلفات / قمامة	(5) ملوث	(6) يحذر
حريص	(8) أكثر نظافة	(9) كهربى	(10) أكثر ملائمة للبيئة	(11) تلوث الهواء	(12) أرخص / أقل سعرًا
مستخدمين	(14) أكثر هدوءًا	(15) مقاعد	(16) مريح		

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 56



A changing world(1)

Today's presentation(2) is about climate change(3). This means our planet(4) is changing(5). Here are two places that are different now.

Australia



In this line graph(6), the x-axis(7) shows the year and the y-axis(8) shows the change in temperature(9). You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter(10) and drier(11). More droughts(12) mean worse fires(13) than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

Mount Kilimanjaro(14)

This bar chart(15) shows that warmer(16) and drier weather is melting(17) the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area(18) of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.

Check Vocabulary

عالم متغير (1)	عرض / تقديم (2)	تغير المناخ (3)	كوكب (4)	يتغير (5)	خط بيانى (6)
المحور السينى (7)	المحور الصادى (8)	درجة الحرارة (9)	أكثر سخونة (10)	أكثر جفافًا (11)	جفاف (12)
حرائق (13)	جبل كليمنجارو (14)	رسم أو مخطط بيانى (15)	أكثر دفئًا (16)	يذيب / ينصهر (17)	مساحة (18)

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes

الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
change (v) change (n) changing (adj)	فعل بمعنى يتغير اسم بمعنى تغير صفة بمعنى متغير	– Our planet is changing. (SB page 56) – There is a change in the weather in the recent years all over the world. – We live in a changing world.

Expressions and Prepositions

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples
on a radio news programme	فى برنامج أخبارى فى الإذاعة	– I'm listening to a report on a radio news programme.
work to + inf.	يعمل على	– Recently, volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more rubbish in the water. (SB page 55)
dangerous place to live	مكان خطير لا يمكن العيش فيه	– Australia is a more dangerous place to live. (SB page 56)
on top of	على قمة ...	– Warmer and drier weather is melting the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain. (SB page 56)
make ... clean	يجعل ... نظيفًا	– The volunteers want to make the canal clean. (SB page 55)
make comparison make conclusion	يقارن يستنتج	What comparisons and conclusions can you make ? (SB page 57)
present ... to	يعرض لـ ...	– Present the project to the class. (SB page 57)
go with	تتماشى مع / يتوافق	– Find photos to go with your presentation. (SB page 57)
form of transport	وسيلة مواصلات	– Bikes are a green form of transport. (WB page 109)
take home	يأخذ للمنزل	– Please take your rubbish home, do not leave it in the park. (WB page 109)

Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We should all protect the .... That's the place in which we live.
   a. school b. environment c. society d. presentation
2. The crops were damaged during the .... as the period of the dry weather was long.
   a. sunset b. starving c. flood d. drought
3. We made a/an .... about climate change.
   a. bus b. mountain c. presentation d. class
4. There are a lot of cars in the city that causes a lot of .... pollution.
   a. air b. water c. food d. wood
5. It was raining for days and then there was a ...., so people used boats to leave their houses.
   a. conclusion b. pollution c. flood d. drought
6. A .... chart is a diagram or a picture that uses bars of different colours and sizes to show different amounts.
   a. line b. graph c. bar d. diagram
7. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ....
   a. changing b. green c. polluted d. pollution

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

8. WB Green means connected to .... the environment.
   a. protecting b. damaging c. giving d. recycling
9. SB Drier weather .... bad fires in Australia.
   a. changes b. shows c. causes d. gives

10. The .... and drier weather is melting ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro.
   a. colder b. warmer c. larger d. dirtier

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. This diagram .... how we can plant a tree.
   a. tells b. shows c. teaches d. learns

12. .... is the opposite of noisy.
   a. Dirty b. Rainy c. Clean d. Quiet

13. Earth is our .... We live on it.
   a. plant b. planet c. city d. country

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. .... top of mountains, there is a lot of ice.
   a. In b. From c. On d. Into

15. I .... a comparison between the life in the city and the countryside.
   a. did b. made c. gave d. thought

III Language

as adjective صفة as

(١) تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوى فى صفة معينة :

- Droughts are **as serious** as floods.
- Recycling is **as important as** using less electricity for the environment.

(٢) فى حالة النفى تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوى :

- not as + adj. الصفة + as
- Australia isn't **as hot as** Africa.

Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.

1 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

2 يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

large → larger / close → closer

3 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger - thin → thinner
- hot → hotter - fit → fitter

4 الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :

- easy → easier
- happy → happier
- lazy → lazier
- healthy → healthier

ex. - The electric buses in Alexandria are greener than the old buses.
- The countryside is quieter than the city.

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than

- (beautiful)

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالًا من

ex. - The River Nile is more polluted than it was before.
- Bikes are less comfortable than cars.
- I think that air pollution is more serious than water pollution.

Irregular Comparative Forms

صيغ المقارنة غير المنتظمة

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين

① Adj.		② Comparative	
bad	سيئ	worse than	أسوأ
far	بعيد	farther than	أبعد
		further than	أبعد
good	جيد	better than	أفضل
late	متأخر	later than	أكثر تأخرا
		latter than	الأخر / الثاني
little	قليل (الكمية)	less than	أقل
many	كثير (العدد)	more than	أكثر
much	كثير (الكمية)		

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The River Nile is .... than before.
   a. more polluted b. polluted c. pollute d. polluter
2. SB The electric buses in Alexandria are .... the old buses.
   a. green b. greener c. greener than d. greener then
3. WB Mount Catherine is a .... mountain than Jabal Mousa.
   a. high b. higher c. highest d. as high
4. SB Reading is .... than watching TV.
   a. interesting b. the interesting
   c. more interesting d. interesting more
5. SB The ice on top of Mount Kilimanjaro isn't melting .... before.
   a. faster b. as fast c. fast as d. as fast as

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Recycling is as .... using less electricity for the environment.
   a. more important   b. important
   c. less important   d. important as

7. Tamer likes reading .... he likes playing computer games.
   a. as much   b. much as   c. much   d. as much as

8. The giraffe is .... the elephant.
   a. taller than   b. taller then   c. tall   d. more tall

9. Messi is a .... than Ronaldo.
   a. better player   b. good player
   c. more good player   d. player better

10. Today, the weather is .... yesterday.
   a. as hot   b. hot as   c. as hot as   d. hotter

11. The dolphin isn't as .... the whale.
   a. as big as   b. big like   c. big as   d. big

12. The shark is .... than the octopus.
   a. more dangerous   b. dangerous
   c. more danger   d. dangerous than

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB Who is as taller as you in the class ? (........)
2. SB The seats in the new buses are comfortable than the old buses. (........)
3. WB This new phone is bad than my old one. (........)
4. WB Mount Kenya is as not high as Mount Kilimanjaro. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. I think air pollution is as serious water pollution. (........)
6. Saudi Arabia isn't as wet Jordan. (........)

7. Mohamed Salah is playing in this match as better as he played in the previous one. (..................)
8. The dolphin isn't as dangerous more the shark. (..................)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjective in brackets :

1. Trains are .... (comfortable) than cars.
2. The country is .... (quiet) than the city.
3. Which is .... (good) Rivers or Canals ?
4. Summer is .... (hot) than winter.
5. Swimming is .... (relaxing) than boxing.

IV Speaking Corner

Talking about climate change :

الحديث عن تغير المناخ

Questions	Answers
1. What is climate change ? ما هو التغيير المناخى ؟	- It's a change in temperature and rainfall. أنه تغير فى درجات الحرارة وكمية المطر.
2. Is climate change as serious as pollution ? هل تغير المناخ يمثل خطورة مثل التلوث ؟	- Yes, of course. It's a real problem. نعم، بالطبع أنها مشكلة حقيقية.
3. Should we be worried about climate change ? هل يجب علينا القلق حيال التغير المناخى ؟	- Yes, we should. It's a very serious problem. نعم، يجب علينا ذلك، فهى مشكلة خطيرة جدًا.
4. How can we stop that ? كيف يمكننا وقف هذا ؟	- We can change our lifestyle. For example, we can use green transport. يمكننا تغير نظام حياتنا، يمكننا استخدام وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة على سبيل المثال.
5. Could climate change destroy life on Earth ? هل يمكن أن يدمر التغير المناخى الحياة على كوكب الأرض ؟	- Actually it could lead to that. فى الحقيقة قد يقود إلى هذا الأمر.

٧ Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التي تساعدك في كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكتروني

(**Climate change** تغيير المناخ)

1. Today's presentation is about climate change.
   ١- العرض التوضيحي اليوم عن تغير المناخ
2. The climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
   ٢- المناخ في أستراليا أصبح أكثر حرارة وأكثر جفافا
3. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.
   ٣- التغير المناخي يعني أن أستراليا تصبح مكانا أكثر خطرا للعيش بها

In three steps



Master your vocabulary

في ثلاث خطوات

اتقن المفردات اللغوية يومياً.

انظر ملحق المهارات

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Sameh : Good morning Mahmoud ! What are you doing ?

Mahmoud : Good morning ! (1) ....

Sameh : What's this book about ?

Mahmoud : (2) ....

Sameh : Climate change ! (3) .... ?

Mahmoud : It's a change in weather temperature, and rainfall over the years.

Sameh : Is it dangerous ?

Mahmoud : (4) ....

Sameh : (5) .... ?

Mahmoud : Because it affects the environment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is the process of making air, water and soil dirty.
   a. Safety b. Pollution c. Flood d. Drought
2. .... is the opposite of flood.
   a. Rain b. Drought c. Pollution d. Cleanliness
3. SB The good .... is that the ice isn't melting as fast as before.
   a. snow b. news c. article d. presentation
4. The smoke of old cars causes .... pollution.
   a. water b. air c. soil d. plant
5. The Earth is the .... where we live.
   a. plant b. planet c. city d. country

6. .... is the opposite of "safe".
   a. Difficult b. Noisy c. Dangerous d. Quiet
7. Hossam likes charity work. He's a .... in a children's hospital.
   a. student b. player c. volunteer d. pilot
8. WB Egypt is .... as Jordan.
   a. as hot b. hot c. like hot d. hot like
9. SB Droughts are .... floods.
   a. as serious as b. as serious c. like serious d. serious
10. Maths is .... than English.
   a. difficult b. difficult than
   c. as difficult d. more difficult

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Is today hot than yesterday? (..............)
2. English is most interesting than maths. (..............)
3. The cars are slower then the planes. (..............)
4. The countryside is as not polluted as the city. (..............)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjective in brackets :

1. Bikes are .... (green) than cars.
2. This car is .... (attractive) than that one.
3. I think history is .... (interesting).
4. Hoda is .... (beautiful) than Leila.
5. My car is .... (new) than yours.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"The effect of climate change on the environment"

Lessons

3 & 4



SB pages 58 : 60 WB pages 111 & 112

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

canal (n)	قناة (مائية)	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
cotton (n)	قطن	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
ship (n)	سفينة	podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
spotlight (n)	تسليط الضوء - ضوء كشاف	green energy (n)	طاقة نظيفة (لا تسبب تلوث)
sweets (n)	حلوى	coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية
locate (d) (v)	يحدد موقع - يقع فى	environment matters (n)	شئون / أمور البيئة
monuments (n)	آثار	Ministry of Tourism (n)	وزارة السياحة

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 &59 WB page 111

title (n)	عنوان / لقب	buildings (n)	مبانى
article (n)	مقال	vegetables (n)	خضراوات
mosque (n)	مسجد	tourists (n)	سائحون
main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى	position (n)	وضع/مكان
focus (ed) (v) , (n)	يركز - تركيز	local (adj) (n)	محلى
potatoes (n)	بطاطس	name (d) (v) , (n)	يسمى / يدعى - اسم
wheat (n)	قمح	sugar (n)	سكر
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	pray (ed) (v)	يصلى
black honey (n)	عسل أسود	particular (adj)	خاص

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 112

turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية	prizes (n)	جوائز
coast (n)	ساحل	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
desert (n)	صحراء	owner (n)	صاحب/مالك
pets (n)	حيوانات أليفة	worker (n)	عامل
respect (ed) (v), (n)	يحترم - احترام	sand (n)	رمال
introduction (n)	مقدمة	scuba diving (n)	الغطس فى الأعماق (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)

exactly (adv)	بالضبط/تماما	boat trips (n)	رحلات بالقارب
tourism (n)	السياحة	wind (n)	رياح
travel companies = tourism companies (n)	شركات السياحة	scuba divers (n)	غطاسين (باستخدام أنابيب التنفس)
farms (n)	مزارع	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يتلف	produce (d) (v)	ينتج/يصدر
recycling bin (n)	صندوق اعادة تدوير	winner (n)	فائز

Famous places and cities أماكن ومدن مشهورة

Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	Al-Ahmadi Mosque	مسجد الأحمدى
The Suez Canal	قناة السويس	The Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر
Minya	مدينة المنيا	Suez	مدينة السويس
Tanta	مدينة طنطا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught
know	يعرف	knew	known
make	يصنع	made	made
teach	يعلم	taught	taught

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
famous / known	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل / منفصل
north	شمال	south	جنوب
east	شرق	west	غرب
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	فظيع

تنويه
هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات
وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

canal	a long area of water made for ships or boats	قناة مائية
cotton	a plant used for making clothes	قطن
locate	find or discover the exact position of something	يحدد موقع
mosque	a building where Muslims can pray	مسجد
spotlight	a very bright, strong light that you can shine on a certain area; also a focus on some information	ضوء كشاف - تسليط الضوء
tourism	the business of providing places to stay and things to do for people who are on holiday	السياحة
wildlife	animals and plants that live in natural conditions	الحياة البرية

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Spotlight(1) on... Port Said(2)

- Port Said is located(3) in the north-east(4) of Egypt.
- The city is known for(5) its ships(6), which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to(7) Suez by the Suez Canal(8)
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.



Check Vocabulary

تسليط الضوء على (1)	مدينة بورسعيد (2)	تقع فى (3)	شمال شرق (4)
معروف بـ (5)	سفن (6)	متصل / مرتبط بـ (7)	قناة السويس (8)

Spotlight on... Tanta.

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton[9] is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious[10] sweets[11].
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque[12] is visited by thousands of people every year.



Check Vocabulary

قطن (9)	لذيذ (10)	حلوى (11)	مسجد (12)

on Lesson 3 SB page 59

My home city is Minya[1]. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes[2], wheat[3] and sugar[4]. The city is known for its delicious "black honey[5]". The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient monuments[6] and buildings[7] are found in the city. My city is very beautiful and interesting[8]!



Check Vocabulary

مدينة المنيا (1)	البطاطس (2)	قمح (3)	سكر (4)
العسل الأسود (5)	آثار (6)	مباني (7)	رائع/شيق (8)

on Lesson 4 WB page 112

The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach[1] and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists[2]. However, the hotel owner[3] said that last year, there were not as many turtles[4] on the beach as usual[5].

Check Vocabulary

شاطئ جميل (1)	سائحون (2)	مالك الفندق (3)	سلاحف بحرية (4)	كالمعتاد (5)

As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand,[6] the hotel workers[7] stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast[8] and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving[9]. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs[10] are often damaged by scuba divers[11]. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips[12] is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy[13] from the sun and wind[14] is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces[15] very little rubbish : most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms[16], and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages[17].

Check Vocabulary

(6) رمال	(7) عمال	(8) ساحل	(9) الغطس في الأعماق بأنبوب تنفس
(10) الشعاب المرجانية	(11) غطاسون في الأعماق (بأنبوب تنفس)	(12) رحلات بالمركب	(13) طاقة نظيفة
(14) رياح	(15) ينتج/يصدر	(16) مزارع محلية	(17) قرى

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 59

Egypt has a dry climate[1]. This means there isn't much rain. Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 centigrade[2] or hotter in Cairo. In other places, the temperature[3] is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 centigrade ... and the desert is even hotter.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مناخ جاف	(2) درجة مئوية	(3) درجة الحرارة

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya[4]. He is kept cool during the day[5] by this traditional item[6] of clothing[7].

And this is a fennec fox[8]. Its large ears help to keep it cool.

It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down[9]. That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal[10], In the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world. Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago. And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains[11].

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

Check Vocabulary

(4) جلابية	(5) أثناء النهار	(6) نموذج تقليدى	(7) ملبس
(8) ثعلب الفنك	(9) تغرب الشمس	(10) قط الكاراكال (وشق الصحراء)	(11) أمطار غزيرة

Listening

• on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Podcast[1] presenter[2]

Today on Environment Matters[3] we're looking at tourism[4] on the Red Sea Coast[5]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[6] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage[7] the environment.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نشرة صوتية	(2) مقدم برنامج	(3) مشاكل/شئون البيئة	(4) سياحة
(5) ساحل البحر الأحمر	(6) وزارة السياحة	(7) يدمر/يتلف	

… on Lesson 4 SB page 60



Podcast Presenter : Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, is that right ?

Salma : Exactly[1]. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great ! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife[2], like sharks, dolphins and turtles.



Podcast Presenter : So, what are you doing to protect the environment ?

Salma : Well, the islands[3] on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[4]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies[5]. We have rules[6] for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to[7] companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Podcast Presenter : Good idea !

Salma : We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.

Check Vocabulary

تماما/بالضبط (1)	الحياة البرية (2)	جُزر (3)	محميات طبيعية (4)
شركات السياحة (5)	قوانين/قواعد (6)	جوائز لـ (7)	

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك وتتبعها جملة النتيجة	– I studied hard. As a result, I got good marks.
so that	بمعنى لكى ويتبعها جملة	– Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that the turtles are safe. (WB page 112)
make ... greener	يجعلها أكثر ملائمة للبيئة	– We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. (SB page 60)
along the river	عبر/بطول النهر	– Farmers grow a lot of oranges along the river. (WB page 111)

Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

famous = known (for)	مشهور بـ	– Port Said is known/famous for its ships. (SB page 58)
around the city	حول المدينة	– I want to go around the city.
spotlight on	تسليط الضوء على	– This article makes a spotlight on the city of Alexandria.
(be) connected to	متصل بـ	– Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. (SB page 58)
(be) located in	يقع فى (مكان)	– Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. (SB page 58)
(be) made from	يصنع من (يأتى بعدها المادة التى صنع منها الشىء وتم تغير شكلها بعد الصناعة)	– The black honey is made from sugar. (SB page 59)
stop ... from	يوقف (شخص) عن فعل شىء	– The hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach. (WB page 112)

stop – (inf. + ing)	يمنع - يوقف	– How to stop tourism damaging the environment is very important. (SB page 60)
important for	هام لـ	– The coral reefs are important for the environment. (SB page 60)
(be) grown in	يُزرع في	– Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. (SB page 59)
as usual	كالمعتاد	– There were not as many turtles on the beach as usual. (WB page 112)
do water sports	يمارس رياضات مائية	– I like doing water sports like scuba diving.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. .... is a plant used for making clothes.
   a. Rice b. Coral c. Cotton d. Tomato
2. The Ministry of .... does its best to attract tourists to Egypt.
   a. Education b. Tourism c. Industry d. Police
3. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez ....
   a. Lake b. Canal c. Nile d. Coast
4. Ras Mohammed is a famous nature .... all over the world.
   a. coast b. reserve c. desert d. oasis
5. The Red Sea is full of colourful ....
   a. ships b. canals c. coral reefs d. hotels
6. There are many ancient .... in the Egyptian Museum.
   a. monuments b. coral reefs c. tourists d. sweets

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

7. SB .... is important to Egypt.
   a. Tourism b. Interest c. Kindness d. Winning
8. WB .... is a very, bright strong light that you can shine on a certain area.
   a. Sunlight b. Spotlight c. Moonlight d. Candlelight
9. WB We know Giza for its ancient ....
   a. museums b. temples c. pyramids d. parks
10. WB The South Hotel is near the .... , and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving.
    a. farm b. canal c. coast d. bank

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

11. We should .... damaging the environment.
    a. protect b. stop c. continue d. cause
12. He bought the house yesterday. He's its .... now.
    a. manager b. worker c. driver d. owner
13. A : Can you .... a place for scuba diving ?
    B : Let's go to Hurghada.
    a. recycle b. make c. suggest d. catch

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Cairo is located .... the north of Egypt.
    a. on b. in c. at d. of
15. Egypt is famous .... its ancient monuments.
    a. for b. at c. off d. by
16. I was sick. .... I couldn't go to school.
    a. Because b. As a result c. But d. Although

(III) Language

The Present Simple : Active & Passive
زمن المضارع البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

	Active المبني للمعلوم	Passive المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) + التصريف الأول ...... He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + inf. مصدر الفعل + (s/es/ies) **ex:** - My brother *helps* me. - We know Tanta for its delicious sweets.	Subject نائب الفاعل (مفعول الجملة الذى حل محل الفاعل) + am / is / are + P.P. ...... **ex:** - I *am helped* (by my brother). - لاحظ تحول ضمير المفعول (me) إلى (I) - Tanta is known for its delicious sweets (by us). - لاحظ تحول ضمير الفاعل (we) إلى (us)
Negative النفي	I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) + don't + inf. المصدر... He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل **ex:** - We *don't play* tennis. - Omar *doesn't eat* sweets.	Subject نائب الفاعل (مفعول الجملة الذى حل محل الفاعل) + am / is / are + not + P.P. ...... **ex:** - Tennis *isn't played* (by us). - Sweets *aren't eaten* (by Omar).

	Active	Passive
Yes / No question السؤال بـ (هل)	Do + I / you / we / they (اسم جمع) + inf. المصدر... ? Does + He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + inf. المصدر... ? **ex:** - *Do* people *speak* English in Brazil? - *Does* Salma *study* maths and science?	Am / Is / Are + subject نائب الفاعل (مفعول الجملة الذى حل محل الفاعل) + P.P. ..... ? **ex:** - *Is* English *spoken* (by people) in Brazil? - *Are* maths and science *studied* (by Salma)?
Wh question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. أداة استفهام + do + I / you / we / they (اسم جمع) + inf. ? Q.W. أداة استفهام + does + he / she / it (اسم مفرد) + inf. ? **ex:** - Where *do* you *buy* your clothes? - Who *cooks* lunch in your family?	Q.W. أداة استفهام + am / is / are + subject نائب الفاعل (مفعول الجملة الذى حل محل الفاعل) + P.P. .... ? **ex:** - Where *are* your clothes *bought*? - Who *is* lunch *cooked* by in your family?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. SB The museum .... by lots of people every year.
   a. visited b. is visited c. are visited d. has visited
2. SB Many fish .... in the sea near Port Said.
   a. have caught b. are caught c. are catching d. catch
3. WB Giza is .... for its ancient pyramids.
   a. knowing b. know c. knew d. known
4. SB Our beautiful coast is .... by people from around the world.
   a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. visits
5. WB Only green energy is .... at the hotel.
   a. use b. used c. using d. uses
6. WB In the East Hotel, most of the rubbish ....
   a. recycled b. has recycled c. is recycling d. is recycled

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. The cake .... by Salma.
   a. is making b. makes c. has made d. is made
8. The letter is .... by Mazen.
   a. wrote b. write c. written d. writing
9. The zoo is visited .... the students.
   a. with b. by c. to d. on
10. The gifts .... to Maha.
    a. is given b. give c. gave d. are given
11. Where is Port Said .... ?
    a. located b. locate c. locates d. to locate
12. .... cotton clothes made in Egypt ?
    a. Have b. Was c. Are d. Can

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. WB Coral reefs sometimes damage by boats. (..........)
2. SB Many ancient buildings and monuments are finding in Minya. (..........)
3. WB What places has visited by tourists in Egypt ? (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. The money is took by the thief. (..........)
5. Luxor Temple is visiting by thousands of tourists every year. (..........)
6. My homework is did by me. (..........)
7. The question asked by Mr Helmi. (..........)

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Minya is .... (locate) near the Nile.
2. Lots of food .... (grow) in Delta.
3. Furniture is .... (make) in Damietta.
4. Fruit is usually .... (pick) in the early morning.
5. Tanta is .... (know) for its delicious sweets.

Speaking Corner

1. Asking and answering questions about a city in your country :

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مدينة فى بلدك :

Questions	Answers
1. What is the name of the city ? Where is it located ? ما اسم هذه المدينة ؟ وأين تقع ؟	- It is Port Said. It is located in the north-east of Egypt. إنها مدينة بورسعيد وتقع فى الشمال الشرقى من مصر.
2. Can you name a famous place in or near the city ? هل يمكن أن تذكر مكان شهير بالمدينة أو بالقرب منها ؟	- The city (Port said) is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. بورسعيد متصلة بمدينة السويس عن طريق قناة السويس.
3. What do people grow or catch around the city ? ما الذى يقوم الناس بزراعته أو اصطياده فى هذه المدينة ؟	- Many fish are caught in the sea near the city (Port Said). العديد من الأسماك يتم اصطيادها فى البحر فى منطقة قريبة من المدينة (بورسعيد).
4. What is the city famous for ? بما تشتهر المدينة ؟	- The city is known for its ships. المدينة تشتهر بالسفن.

2. Asking and answering questions about solving environmental problems :

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن كيفية حل المشكلات البيئية :

Questions	Answers
1. Why is it important to look after the planet ? لماذا من المهم الاهتمام / الاعتناء بالكوكب ؟	- Because if the planet is damaged, we won't have a place to live on. لأن لو الكوكب تم تدميره، لن يكون هناك مكان نعيش فيه.

2. What do you do to try to help the planet ? ماذا تفعل لمحاولة مساعدة الكوكب ؟	- We should try to keep the environment clean by reducing pollution. يجب أن نحاول أن نحافظ على البيئة بتقليل التلوث
3. How could the owners of a hotel near the Red Sea help the environment ? كيف لمالكى فندق على ساحل البحر الأحمر مساعدة البيئة ؟	- They could put recycling bins in every room. يمكن أن يضعوا سلال إعادة التدوير فى كل غرفة.
4. Do you think that there are more things you could do to help the environment ? How could your family help ? What about your school ? هل تعتقد أن هناك أشياء يمكن أن نقوم بها لمساعدة البيئة ؟ كيف لأسرتك أن تساعد ؟ وماذا عن مدرستك ؟	- Yes, there are more things we could do to help the environment. My family could help by using recycling bins. My school could make posters to teach students how to help the environment. نعم، هناك أشياء أكثر يمكن أن نقوم بها لمساعدة البيئة. أسرتى يمكن أن تساعد باستخدام صناديق تدوير القمامة ومدرستى يمكن أن تصمم ملصقات لتعليم الطلاب كيف يساعدون البيئة.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

" المنيا Minya"

1. Minya is located near the Nile.

١. تقع مدينة المنيا بالقرب من النيل.

2. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.

٢. تزرع كثير من الأطعمة فى المنطقة المحلية مثل البطاطس، القمح والسكر.

3. The city is known for its delicious "Black honey".

٣. تشتهر المدينة بالعسل الأسود اللذيذ.

4. Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the city.

٤. قد تم العثور على كثير من الآثار والمبانى القديمة فى المدينة.

General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The text is about ....
   a. Minya b. Tanta c. Cairo d. Port Said
2. Where is the city located ? - It is located in the .... of Egypt.
   a. north b. south c. east d. west
3. The city is known for ....
   a. its temples b. its delicious sweets
   c. its ancient monuments d. its pyramids
4. What is grown there ?
   a. Cotton b. Rice c. Wheat d. Sugar

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kamel : Hello Ahmed ! Where do you live ?
Ahmed : Hello Kamel ! (1) ....
Kamel : (2) .... ?
Ahmed : Giza is located near Cairo.
Kamel : (3) .... ?
Ahmed : It is known for the Pyramids. (4) .... ?
Kamel : I live in Luxor.
Ahmed : What is visited by tourists in Luxor ?
Kamel : (5) ....
Ahmed : Oh ! I visited Luxor Temple before.
Kamel : If you want to visit it again, phone me.
Ahmed : (6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB The .... is a building where you can pray.
   a. school b. hospital c. park d. mosque
2. Mohamed Salah is a / an .... footballer.
   a. dangerous b. famous c. crazy d. unknown

.... connects between Suez and Port Said.

3. The Suez ....
   a. Channel b. Canal c. Sea d. Passage
4. Robinson Crusoe's .... sank in the sea because of a storm.
   a. shop b. ship c. flat d. farm
5. " .... " is the opposite of "damage".
   a. Protect b. Visit c. Come d. Catch
6. The .... lives in the desert.
   a. fish b. dolphin c. shark d. camel
7. The Red Sea Coast has .... reefs and lots of important wildlife.
   a. historical b. coral c. art d. cultural
8. The old man .... by the policeman.
   a. is helped b. has helped c. helped d. help
9. The juice is .... by Amir.
   a. drinking b. drunk c. drank d. drink
10. The book .... by Hend.
   a. is read b. read c. reads d. has read

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The city known for its ships. (.........)
2. WB A lot of oranges are growing along the river. (.........)
3. The books have put on the bookshelf by Jana. (.........)
4. The bike is rode by Ismael. (.........)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. Egypt .... (visit) by thousands of tourists.
2. Many houses .... (destroy) by earthquakes.
3. Trees .... (cut) down by farmers.
4. Cars .... (make) in Japan.
5. Where are these .... books (make) ?

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your home city"

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 113 & 114

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

riverbank(n)	صفة النهر	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
plastic bags	أكياس بلاستيك	volunteer (n)	متطوع
aim(ed) (v)	يهدف	paper (n)	ورق
plastic (n)	بلاستيك	suggestion (n)	اقتراح

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 113

diagram (n)	رسم تخطيطي	respond (ed) (v)	يرد / يستجيب
problem (n)	مشكلة	solve (d) (v)	يحل (مشكلة)
washing (n)	غسيل	solutions (n)	حلول
water (ed) (v) , (n)	يسقى/ماء	water bottles (n)	زجاجات المياه
idea (n)	فكرة	rubbish bin(n)	سلة المهملات
plants (n)	نباتات	vote (d) (v) , (n)	تصويت - يصّوت
school project (n)	مشروع دراسي	event (n)	حدث هام
special (adj)	خاص	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 114

global (adj)	عالمي	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر (شخص)	billion (n)	بليون
importance (n)	أهمية	tonne (n)	طن (١٠٠٠ كيلو جرام)
including(prep)	متضمنًا / مشتملًا على	burn (ed) (v)	يحرق / يحترق
gas (n)	غاز	coloured (adj)	ملون
oil (n)	زيت	improve (d) (v)	يحسن
smoke (d) (v) , (n)	يدخن - دخان	school newspaper (n)	جريدة المدرسة
market (n)	سوق		

figs (n)	تين	warm (ed) , (v) , (adj)	يدفئ / دافئ
traffic (n)	المرور	souvenirs (n)	هدايا تذكارية
hope (d) (v)	يتمنى	form (n)	شكل / نمط
swap (ped) (v)	يبادل (شئ بغيره)		

Countries , Cities and places
بلاد ، مدن وأماكن

Amsterdam	مدينة امستردام (عاصمة هولندا)	Marsa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم (فى مصر)
Tunisia	دولة تونس	South Korea	دولة كوريا الجنوبية
Sidi Bou Said	مدينة سيدى بوسعيد (فى تونس)	Sidi Barrani	مدينة سيدى برانى (في مصر)
Netherlands	دولة هولندا	Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
give	يعطى	gave	given
burn	يحرق / يحترق	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
lead	يؤدى إلى	led	led

Words and Opposites
كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
less	أقل	more	أكثر
least	الأقل	most	الأكثر
real	حقيقى	unreal	غير حقيقى
problem	مشكلة	solution	حل

1 Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61



Aya : The problem[1] is that we all use too much water.

Reem : That's true[2]. So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, why don't we try[3] recycling[4] water ?

Reem : How could we do that ?

Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing[5] to water the plants[6].

Reem : That's an interesting idea[7] ! The plants would like that.

Check Vocabulary

مشكلة (1)	هذا صحيح (2)	يجرب (3)	تدوير (4)	غسيل (5)	يسقى النباتات (6)	فكرة مثيرة للاهتمام (7)

on Lesson 5 WB page 113



Girl : Our school project[1] this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin[2] in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place[3] in the city.

But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper[4] or plastic[5]. We can recycle[6] a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that ? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

Check Vocabulary

مشروع دراسي (1)	سلة المخلفات (2)	مكان خاص (3)	ورق (4)	بلاستيك (5)	يعيد تدوير (6)

on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles [1] in the rubbish bin [2]. The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila : How can we stop people using them ?

Dina : Why don't we ask people to use them again ?

Leila : How could we do that ?

Dina : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring [3] them to school the next day.

Leila : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

Check Vocabulary

(1) زجاجات مياه بلاستيكية	(2) سلة مهملات	(3) يحضر

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi



Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up[1] the part of the riverbank[2] near the city centre[3]. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish. "There were lots of plastic bags[4] and bottles[5]", he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages[6] the wildlife[7]".

Well done to the volunteers[8]!

Check Vocabulary

(1) ينظف	(2) ضفة النهر	(3) وسط المدينة	(4) أكياس بلاستيكية	(5) زجاجات
(6) يدمر / يتلف	(7) الحياة البرية	(8) متطوعين		

on Lesson 6 WB page 114



What is Global Recycling Day ?

Global Recycling Day[1] is an event[2] in March. It aims to[3] remind[4] people of the importance[5] of recycling things including[6] paper,plastic, metal, water and even gas[7] and oil[8]. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

So why is recycling so important ?

In 2018, people produced about 11 billion[9] tonnes[10] of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burned and this can lead to[11] climate change.

What are countries doing about the problem ?

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles more than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured[12] plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more, because you cannot recycle them. Most countries hope[13] to recycle more in the future.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اليوم العالمي لإعادة تدوير النفايات	(2) حدث	(3) يهدف إلى	(4) يُذكر	(5) أهمية
(6) متضمنًا / مشتملًا على	(7) غاز	(8) زيت	(9) بليون	(10) أطنان
(11) يؤدي إلى	(12) ملون	(13) يتمنى		

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

Language Notes — الملاحظات اللغوية

Word / Expression	Meaning	Examples أمثلة
remind	يُذكر (شخص آخر) بشيء	– He reminded me of doing my homework.
get warmer	يزداد دفئًا	– When the planet gets warmer, it is called climate change. (SB page 63)

lie on a beach	يستلقي على شاطئ	– Lying on a beach is more relaxing than working in the city. (SB page 63)
aim to + inf.	يهدف إلى	– Global Recycling Day aims to remind people of the importance of recycling things. (WB page 114)
lead to	يؤدي إلى	– Burning rubbish can lead to climate change.
Expressions and Prepositions		**التعبيرات وحروف الجر**
a form of	شكل / نمط من …	– Driving is not a green form of transport. (WB page 115)
try recycling water	يجرب إعادة تدوير المياه	– Well, why don't we try recycling water? (SB page 61)
ask for	يطلب	– When talking about a problem, you need to ask others for their ideas about how to solve it. (SB page 61)
respond to	يستجيب لـ … يرد على …	– You need to respond to all the comments on your project.
have a class vote on	يجرى تصويت بالفصل على	– Have a class vote on the best idea. (SB page 61)
clean up	ينظف	– Last weekend, 10 students from class 7 helped clean up a part of the riverbank near the city centre. (SB page 62)
It was great to + inf.	كان من الرائع أن …	– It was great to clean the riverbank. (SB page 62)
hope to	يتمنى أن	– Most countries hope to recycle more in the future. (WB page 114)

more relaxing than
(SB page 63)

ay aim to remind
rtance of recycling
(WB page 114)

n lead to climate

التعبيرات وحروف الجر

n form of
(WB page 115)

recycling water ?
(SB page 61)

problem, you
their ideas
(SB page 61)

all the
ect.

best idea.
(SB page 61)

s from class 7
the riverbank
(SB page 62)

iverbank.
(SB page 62)

cycle more
VB page 114)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The flood damaged the houses which were on the ....
   a. river b. riverbank c. river bed d. river water
2. City .... is the place where we can buy many things.
   a. Bank b. Centre c. South d. East
3. Public libraries .... to encourage students to read and borrow books.
   a. give b. bring c. aim d. catch
4. I made many .... for the project and they all agreed to them.
   a. problems b. suggestions c. celebrations d. competitions

SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5. WB This week's .... is about rubbish at school.
   a. protection b. project c. object d. subject
6. WB The event aims to .... people of the importance of recycling things.
   a. remind b. remember c. recycle d. die
7. WB Recycling things .... paper, plastic and metal is important.
   a. including b. changing c. burning d. solving
8. SB The .... is that we all use too much water.
   a. problem b. suggestion c. solution d. answer

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. We all worked hard to .... the problem of pollution.
   a. smoke b. solve c. think d. answer
10. .... rubbish is good for the environment.
    a. Recycling b. Doing c. Making d. Throwing
11. Plants need .... to grow.
    a. oil b. gas c. plastic d. water

12. You can .... plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
a. produce b. make c. reuse d. eat

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Bikes are one of the best forms .... transport.
a. off b. on c. in d. of

14. What does this project aim .... ? - Protecting the environment.
a. too b. of c. to d. on

15. Every year we .... a class vote to choose a leader for our class.
a. have b. make c. do d. take

III Speaking Corner

Suggesting solutions to a problem اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.
The problem is that we use too many of them.

دينا : انظرى إلى جميع زجاجات المياه البلاستيكية فى سلة القمامة. المشكلة هى أننا نستخدم الكثير منها.

Leila : How can we stop people using them ?

ليلى : كيف يمكننا إيقاف استخدام الأشخاص لها ؟

Dina : Why don't we ask people use them again ?

دينا : لما لا نطلب من الأشخاص إعادة استخدامها ؟

Leila : How could we do that ?

ليلى : كيف يمكننا القيام بذلك ؟

Dina : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

دينا : يمكن للأشخاص أخذ الزجاجات للمنزل وغسلها ثم إحضارها إلى المدرسة فى اليوم التالى.

Leila : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

ليلى : إنها لفكرة مثيرة للاهتمام. يمكننا أن نرى ما يفكر فيه المعلم.

IV Writing

Writing tips! نصائح للكتابة

Remember to check your writing for mistakes Make sure that the grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

- تذكر أن تتحقق من الأخطاء عند الكتابة. تأكد من صحة القواعد النحوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / البريد الإلكترونى.

(Rubbish القمامة)

1. We have a rubbish bin in every classroom.
   ١. لدينا سلة مهملات فى كل فصل.
2. Students put their rubbish in it .
   ٢. يضع التلاميذ القمامة بها.
3. Rubbish is collected every week and taken to a special place.
   ٣. يتم جمع القمامة كل أسبوع ويتم نقلها إلى مكان خاص.

احرص على اقتناء



★ كتاب المعاصر فى المراجعة النهائية ★

للصف الثانى الاعدادى

طبقًا لأخر ما تقرر من مواصفات الورقة
الامتحانية للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٠-٢٠٢١

«أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق»



General Exercises On Lessons 5 & 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How many students helped in this problem ?
   a. Five   b. Ten   c. Three   d. Twenty
2. The students helped .... the riverbank.
   a. clean up   b. pollute   c. connect   d. damage
3. The riverbank is .... the city centre.
   a. far from   b. opposite   c. near   d. in
4. The students collected 15 bags of ....
   a. souvenirs   b. plastic   c. metal   d. rubbish

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Lobna : Hi, Nesma !
Nesma : Hi, Lobna ! (1) .... ?
Lobna : I listened to a radio programme.
Nesma : (2) .... ?
Lobna : It was about how to use less water.
Nesma : (3) .... ! But how can we do that ?
Lobna : (4) ....
Nesma : How can we recycle water ?
Lobna : We could use water from washing to water the plants.
Nesma : (5) .... !
Lobna : (6) .... ?
Nesma : We can also design posters to make people save water.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students should be .... while listening to their teacher's instructions.
   a. sad   b. bad   c. noisy   d. careful
2. .... the bed and relax. You look so tired.
   a. Lie on   b. Look at   c. Move to   d. Sleep

...ater has a great .... in our life.
a. suggestion b. location c. importance d. rubbish

We shouldn't .... the rubbish. It causes air pollution.
a. vote b. pollute c. damage d. burn

The .... of old cars leads to air pollution.
a. air b. form c. smoke d. plastic

The students .... 15 bags of rubbish to clean the riverbank.
a. damaged b. collected c. won d. burnt

I went to the .... to buy souvenirs to my friend.
a. museum b. baker's
c. market d. nature reserve

The lesson is .... by the teacher.
a. explain b. explaining c. explained d. explains

My new house is .... than the old one.
a. larger b. the large c. largest d. large

The black car is .... the blue one.
a. as expensive as b. like expensive
c. as expensive d. more expensive

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Plastic pollution is bad now than it was before. (........)
2. A bike is not as fast than a car. (........)
3. That suggestion is making by Ahmed. (........)
4. The book is reading by Michel. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY(90) words on :

"How to use less water"

Self Assessment Activity
التقييم الذاتى

- 🔵 ممتاز
- 🟢 جيد جداً
- 🟡 جيد
- 🔴 غير جيد

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ... فى نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على ...

1 Learn important vocabulary تعلم مفردات لغوية هامة

- air pollution
- drought
- flood
- rubbish
- city centre
- environment
- nature reserve
- wildlife
- riverbank
- volunteer

2 Read and write sentences using comparative form of adjectives and the present simple passive :
اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة وصيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

- Egypt is bigger than Jordan.
- Football is not as difficult as handball.
- Sidi Bou Said is located in North Tunisia.
- Coffee beans are grown in Africa.

3 Suggest sollutions to a problem : اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

- A : Why don't we try recycling rubbish ?
- B : That's an interesting idea.
- A : Why don't we ask people to use plastic water bottles again ?
- B : How could we do that ?

لمزيد من التدريبات • جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

REVIEW on unit 6

SB page 63 WB page 115

1. Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	canal	قناة
drought	جفاف	cotton	قطن
flood	فيضان	mosque	مسجد
rubbish	قمامة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
water pollution	تلوث الماء	tourism	سياحة
green	متعلق بحماية البيئة / ملائم للبيئة	city centre	وسط المدينة
environment	البيئة	paper	ورق
climate change	تغير المناخ	plastic	بلاستيك
volunteer	متطوع	suggestion	اقتراح
polluted	ملوث	relaxing	استرخاء

2. Language

Comparative forms : صيغ المقارنة :

	Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين
Short adjectives صفات قصيرة	- She is taller than her mother. - He is shorter than his brother.
Long adjectives صفات طويلة	- Maths is more difficult than English. - Football is less dangerous than mountain climbing.

Present simple passive : صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

Active	Passive
- People cook eggs in a big pan.	- Eggs are cooked in a big pan.
- She doesn't send an email.	- An email isn't sent by her.
- Do they eat special foods at the festivals ?	- Are special foods eaten at the festivals ?

3. Speaking

Suggesting solution to a problem
اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water ?
Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water ?
Reem : How could we do that ?
Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem : That's an interesting idea ! The plants would like that.

4. Related paragraphs / emails

موضوعات / رسائل بريد إلكترونى هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

My home city is Luxor. It is located in the south of Egypt. It is near the Nile. It is near also Aswan which is famous for the High Dam. Luxor is famous for the ancient monuments and temples. There are many temples like Luxor Temple and Karnak. Tourists from all around the world like to visit Luxor for its ancient monuments and to visit its temples. They also like to go on boat trips on the Nile. It is also famous for its warm weather. My city is attractive and beautiful. I like my city so much.

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية أو البريد الإلكتروني"

Writing Skill

A Paragraph / An email on

Climate change / Recycling / Spotlight on a certain city

Brainstorming مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكترونى

- Has pollution got an effect on the climate ?
- What things can we recycle ?

Vocabulary مفردات لغوية مساعدة

rubbish	collect
climate change	city centre
recycling things	plastic bags
(be) located in	plastic bottles
damage	careful

Expressions & Structures تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- It is located in the ....
- This city is known for ....
- This bar chart shows that ....
- In this line graph, you can see that ....

Paragraph / Email كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكترونى

Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"Recycling things"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Preparing a bar chart about the climate in your country & recycling project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن إعداد رسم بيانى عن المناخ فى بلدك وعن إعادة تدوير الأشياء



Objectives الأهداف

1. To know how to prepare a bar chart.
2. To know what things that can be recycled.

١- أن تعرف كيف تعد / تجهز رسم بيانى.

٢- أن تعرف ما الأشياء التى يمكن تدويرها.

Get started استعد

1. Compare your country climate with another country.

١- قارن بين المناخ فى بلدك والمناخ فى بلد أخرى.

2. What things can be recycled ?

٢- ما هى الأشياء التى يمكن إعادة تدويرها ؟

Project البحث / المشروع

Write a short paragraph of about (40 : 60 words) on recycling.

اكتب فقرة قصيرة من (٤٠ : ٦٠ كلمة) عن إعادة التدوير.

Support your paragraph using pictures.

ادعم فقرتك بالصور.

OR Make a poster on a bar chart describing Egypt's climate.

أو صمم ملصقًا عن خريطة رسم بيانى تصف حالة المناخ فى مصر.

Your Project

....

....

....

....

....

Sheet resources مصادر المشروع

* https ://www.ekb.eg
* The internet
* Student's books

- بنك المعرفة المصرى
- الانترنت
- الكتب المدرسية

تقوية
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

Test yourself unit 6

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Minya is located near the ....
   a. Nile b. sea c. bank d. hospital
2. Minya is known for its delicious ....
   a. figs b. potatoes c. black honey d. apples
3. There are many ancient .... in Minya.
   a. bags b. forms c. monuments d. stores
4. Minya is very ....
   a. ugly b. beautiful c. good d. bad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reem : I see you are thinking about something.

Aya : That's true. (1) ....

Reem : A serious problem ! (2) .... ?

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem : You're right. (3) .... ?

Aya : We can recycle water.

Reem : (4) .... ?

Aya : We can use water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : (5) .... ! The plants would like that.

Aya : Let's share ideas with our friends to find other solutions.

Reem : That's a good idea.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last weekend, ten students from class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles" **he** said. "We even found an old shoe ! One of the students said. "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to **teach** people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife."

Well done to the volunteers !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. What do you think of students from class 7 ?

3. Why were the students sad ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**teach**" is the opposite of ....
   a. know b. learn c. study d. write
5. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. Mr Hassan b. one of the students
   c. Mr Samy d. one of the volunteers
6. The rubbish the students collected were ....
   a. plastic bags b. bottles c. an old shoe d. a,b & c

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Air pollution is bad for our ....
   a. environment b. temperature c. culture d. situation
2. The .... made the whole city covered with water.
   a. drought b. volcano c. flood d. pollution
3. Living in the country is more .... than in the city.
   a. noisy b. expensive c. relaxing d. crowded
4. Climate .... affects our planet.
   a. structure b. culture c. change d. charge
5. The Suez .... is very important for our country, Egypt.
   a. Line b. City c. Canal d. Channel

6. Luxor is .... in the south of Egypt.
a. built b. located c. damaged d. stayed

7. The meal I had was really .... I enjoyed it a lot.
a. terrible b. expensive c. salty d. delicious

8. SB Australia is not as .... Africa.
a. hotter b. hot c. hot as d. hotter than

9. Cotton .... in Egypt by farmers.
a. grow b. grows c. is grown d. are grown

10. WB A bike is not as fast .... a car.
a. as b. than c. that d. so

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs / adjectives in brackets :

1. The canal is .... (polluted) than it was before.
2. Is today .... (hot) than yesterday ?
3. The ice is melting .... (fast) than before.
4. The city .... (know) for its beautiful buildings.

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Iraq isn't as <u>hotter</u> as Saudi Arabia. (................)
2. SB The traffic in Cairo is <u>as noisy</u> than Marsa Alam. (................)
3. Cars became faster <u>as</u> before. (................)
4. From Cairo to Alexandria is <u>far</u> than Mansoura. (................)

E. Writing

7 Write an email of NINETY (90) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tamer about recycling at home. Your name is Waheed and your email address is waheed@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117



Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Mrs Saki : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you ?

Mr El-Baz : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please ?

Mrs Saki : Of course. We are open every day from 9 am to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

Mr El-Baz : Can I buy tickets at the museum ?

Mrs Saki : Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

Mr El-Baz : How much are the tickets ?

Mrs Saki : They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and students.

Mr El-Baz : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

Mrs Saki : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche EL Nil.

Mr El-Baz : Thank you so much for your help !

Mrs Saki : You're welcome. Bye !

on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Narrator : one

Woman: Good morning, how can I help you ?

Man : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.

Woman: Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife[1], or you could go scuba diving[2].

Narrator : two

Man 1 : Hello, how can I help you today ?

Man 2 : Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs ?

Man 1 : Of course. Adults[4] are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.



Man 2 : Can I buy the tickets online[5] ?

Man 1 : Yes, and the tickets are cheaper[6] on the museum website[7], too.

Narrator : three

Woman 1 : Good afternoon, how can I help ?

Woman 2 : I'd like to know what time you close today.

Woman 1 : Certainly. We close at 3 p.m, so if you want to visit the castle[8] today, you'll have to get here soon.

Woman 2 : Thank you for your help.

Check Vocabulary

الحياة البرية (1)	(2) الغطس فى الأعماق	(3) يتكلف	(4) البالغين
متصل بالإنترنت (5)	(6) أرخص	(7) موقع المتحف	(8) القلعة

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

A trip to Luxor Museum

By Hamid

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am.

As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues[1]. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces[2] that once belonged to[3] rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favouruite objects were the metal bowls[4] from the fourteenth century[5]. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.

Check Vocabulary

تماثيل (1)	(2) قلادات/ عقود	(3) تخص / تنتمى إلى	(4) أوعية من المعدن	(5) قرن (١٠٠ سنة)

- on Lesson 2 SB page 65

Beach rules

- Don't swim when the weather is bad.
- Swim near the beach, where we can see you.
- Wear a hat between 11 am and 3 p.m.
- No loud music !
- Put your rubbish in the bins.
- Only play ball games in the park area.

- on Lesson 1 WB page 116

The city of Edfu



The city of Edfu, which is located to the west of the River Nile, is known for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until 1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an arch in the sand. He realised that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off the temple and today, it is one of the biggest temples in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the temple, which is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists who go to the temple always remember this awesome building.

مراجعة عامة على Unit 4 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
arch	قوس
castle	قلعة
mosque	مسجد
museum	متحف
pyramid	هرم
ruins	بقايا / آثار
stadium	ستاد رياضى
statue	تمثال
temple	معبد
theatre	مسرح
awesome	رائع - مدهش
historic	تاريخى
bowl	سلطانية
papyrus	ورق البردى
mask	قناع
figure	شكل - تمثال
ring	خاتم
necklace	عقد / قلادة
coin	عملة معدنية
clay	صلصال
designs	تصميمات
jewellery	مجوهرات
except	ماعدا
runner	عداء / متسابق

Language

1. Expressing rules using must/mustn't

فاعل + must يجب / mustn't لا يجب + inf. المصدر

- You **must listen** to the teacher.
- You **mustn't eat** or drink in a museum.

2. The past continuous tense.
زمن الماضى المستمر

(I - He - She - It) + was + inf. + ing

(We - You - They) + were + inf. + ing

ex.: - I was studying my lessons.
- They were having lunch.

while / As / just as + past cont. ماضى مستمر , past simple ماضى بسيط

ex.: - While Salma was watching TV, the doorbell rang.
- The light went out as Mona was reading a book.

Speaking

A telephone call asking for information

- How can I help you ?
- Hello, can you tell me .... ?
- Certainly. / Of course. It's ....
- I'd like to know what time ....
- Can I buy .... ?
- Thank you for your help.

Mini-Test on Unit 4

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She wears a lot of gold ....
   a. senet b. papyrus c. jewellery d. culture
2. Everyone is going on the school trip .... me.
   a. accept b. expect c. expected d. except
3. This bowl is made of ....
   a. oil b. wood c. clay d. water
4. We put flowers in a .... for decoration الزينة .
   a. figure b. mask c. vase d. tool
5. A .... is a piece of jewellery worn around the neck.
   a. vase b. necklace c. mask d. figure
6. The ancient Egyptians used .... for writing.
   a. mask b. jewellery c. coins d. papyrus
7. Many .... have a bad effect تأثير on the environment.
   a. designs b. chemicals c. models d. squares
8. While we were waiting to get into the museum, I .... my friend Amir.
   a. see b. saw c. seen d. was seen
9. While .... about the museum, my mother brought me some juice.
   a. read b. is reading
   c. I was reading d. reads
10. You .... be noisy in class.
   a. mustn't b. must c. can d. should

2. Read and correct the underlined word :

1. You mustn't parks your car here. (..................)
2. While playing, Ahmed breaks his leg. (..................)
3. I slept when you knocked on the door. (..................)
4. Are you watching TV when your brother came ? (..................)

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY(90) words on :

"A famous historic place"

....

....

....

....

...... my friend Amir.

a. see b. saw c. seen d. was seen

مراجعة عامة على Unit 5 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
tidying up	ترتيب - تنظيم
washing up	غسل الأوانى
taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة
putting away clothes	وضع ملابس فى مكانها المعتاد
messy	فوضوى / غير مرتب
random	عشوائى
smile	ابتسامة
donate	يتبرع
donation	تبرع
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
cruel	قاسى
servant	خادم
behave	يتصرف / يسلك
community	مجتمع / جماعة
disabled	عاجز - مُقعد
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
share	يشارك - يتقاسم
social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى
kindness	عطف / طيبة

Language

1. Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

(who – which – "that" – where)

جملة + Who "للعاقل" الذى / التى / الذين — Which "لغير العاقل" الذى / التى / الذين + جملة

جملة + Where "للمكان" حيث + subject الفاعل + verb الفعل + باقى جملة

ex.: - This is the man who lives next door to Amgad.
- I need the tool which is next to the knife.
- This is the place where Amgad usually works.

2. To say something is necessary

Subject + have to / has to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - People have to get their passports before travelling.

3. To say something is not necessary

Subject + doesn't have to / don't have to + inf. المصدر

- تعبر عن شئ غير ضرورى أو أنت غير ملزم بفعله فى المضارع.

ex.: - Today is Friday. I don't have to get up early.

Speaking

A discussion about jobs in the house :

1. Do you have to do jobs at home ?
   Yes, I have to do some jobs at home.
2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home ?
   I have to do the washing up and tidying up.

Mini-Test on Unit 5

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB .... act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason.
   a. Factual b. Random
   c. Reasonable d. Imaginative
2. I'm a .... in this town, can you tell me the way to the station ?
   a. stranger b. stronger c. citizen d. friend
3. This .... on your face makes me so happy.
   a. smell b. smile c. small d. slim
4. You passed your exams. - .... !
   a. well done b. I disagree
   c. I agree d. Thanks
5. I didn't arrange for this. It's really ....
   a. established b. stepped
   c. messy d. organized
6. Helping others and taking care of them shows your ....
   a. kindness b. cruelty
   c. anger d. carelessness
7. These .... really show how kind you are.
   a. ingredients b. accidents
   c. actions d. actors
8. You .... go to work today. It's Friday.
   a. have to b. has to
   c. don't have to d. doesn't have to
9. Students in primary schools .... wear a uniform.
   a. have to b. has to
   c. don't have to d. doesn't have to
10. It was the watch .... my father gave me for my birthday.
    a. that b. who c. where d. whose

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
air pollution	تلوث الهواء
drought	جفاف
flood	فيضان
rubbish	قمامة
water pollution	تلوث الماء
line graph	خط بيانى
melt	يذوب - ينصهر
presentation	عرض - تقديم
canal	قناة مائية
cotton	قطن
(be) located in	يقع فى
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
podcast	نشرة اذاعية
recycling	أعادة تدوير
environment	البيئة
Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر
green	ملائم للبيئة
temperature	درجة الحرارة

Language

1. Present simple passive :
١. صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Active	Passive
- People cook eggs in a big pan.	- Eggs are cooked in a big pan.
- She doesn't send this email.	- This email isn't sent by her.
- Do they eat special foods at the festivals ?	- Are special foods eaten at the festivals ?

2. Comparatives :
٢. المقارنة بين إثنين فى صفة :

Long adjectives	Short adjectives
- Maths is more difficult than English. - Football is less dangerous than mountain climbing.	- She is taller than her mother. - He is shorter than his brother.

Speaking

Suggesting solutions to a problem.
اقتراح حلول لمشكلة ما

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila : How can we stop people using them ?

Dina : Why don't we ask people to use them again ?

Leila : How could we do that ?

Dina : People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : That's an interesting idea! We can see what the teacher thinks.

Mini-Test on Unit 6

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ice on Mount Kilimanjaro .... because of the climate change.
   a. flooded b. polluted c. melted d. drew
2. WB There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there's a/an ....
   a. drought b. volcano c. flood d. earthquake
3. There was a/an .... , so the cities are covered with a lot of water.
   a. axis b. flood c. drought d. change
4. Electric means of transport is really .... That makes the environment clean.
   a. beautiful b. green c. careful d. crowded
5. In winter, the .... in Egypt is always cool.
   a. temperature b. mark
   c. climate d. degree
6. WB Please take your .... away, but don't leave it in the park.
   a. clothes b. rubbish c. belongings d. drought
7. SB This line .... shows the temperatures in Australia.
   a. presentation b. graph
   c. axis d. bar
8. WB Which place .... by the most people in the world ?
   a. is visited b. is visiting
   c. visited d. be visited
9. WB Football is .... all around the world.
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
10. Which is .... to walk to, the park or the museum ?
    a. farther b. far c. farthest d. as far

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Bikes are <u>green</u> than cars. (............)
2. My flat is as quiet <u>than</u> yours. (............)
3. Is that car better or <u>bad</u> than yours? (............)
4. Where is Aswan <u>locates</u> in Egypt ? (............)

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"What you and your family do on holidays"

Holidays are a good chance for me and my family to relax. We enjoy our time so much. We prefer travelling to Hurghada or Alexandria on holidays. We can practise many activities there. I spend most of my time swimming and playing football. At night, we like sitting on a café with a good view on the sea. My sisters prefer going to the cinema at night. The whole family have lunch together every day. My father prefers having fish, but I like having meat instead.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My new house"

I'm so happy as we have just moved to our new house. We have a large house. It consists of three floors. My brother shared a room with me in the old house. Now, I have my own room alone. My room has a good view from the window. Also, my father made a large room for reading books. It has many books. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. I enjoy playing chess with my grandfather in the garden of the house every morning. We are so happy.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : ali@gmail.com
To : tamer@gmail.com
Subject : Describing my bedroom

Dear Tamer,

I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my bedroom. I made some changes. It looks beautiful. I have a new bed. It's comfortable and bigger than the old one. I have also a nice desk to study on. It has three drawers to put my things in. My bedroom includes a small bathroom with a nice basin to wash. Also, I have a wardrobe on the right of the bed. When I open the window, I can see the beautiful view of the Nile. Tell me about your bedroom. Write me soon.

Yours,

Ali

Test on unit 1

"The home I want to live in"

I hope to build a new large house in the future. The house, which I want, should be very big with a garden. Also, it should have a wall and a gate on the front. My home should include all comfortable things. The rooms should be large with windows everywhere. I will buy fine carpets and curtains. Chairs and sofas should match the curtains. I like using simple decorations everywhere. I'll make a room for reading as a small library. Also, children should have a room for their toys and games.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : hady@gmail.com
To : ahmed@gmail.com
Subject : Night workers

Dear Ahmed,

We all should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs such as nurses, call-centre workers and policemen. Nurses have to stay late at night in hospitals. They should look after patients all night. They behave kindly to patients and help them to recover. Call-centre workers also answer

phone calls of people and help them. They should be also kind to people. Also, policemen are very important for our life. They make sure that people are safe all night. Night workers are very useful for the community. See you soon.

Yours,

Hady

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Making new friends"

Making new friends helps us a lot in our life. When you move to a new place or a new school, you can make new friends. They help you make right decisions and have new experience. It's important to choose your new friends carefully. Good friends will help you in your life. Don't make friends with people who are older than you. They might think in a different way. You can ask your parents or teachers when you want to make new friends with people you don't know. People can't live alone without friends. Friends can help you improve your character well.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samir@gmail.com
To : ali@gmail.com
Subject : Congratulating on success

Dear Ali,

How are things ? It pleases me so much to congratulate you on your success. How are you and your family ? I'm so proud of your achievement. It's great to come first in your exams. I want to ask you about your favourite subject and how you plan your time to reach your goal. I hope to succeed and come first next year. I'm going to visit you next Friday to talk about your achievement and play together. See you soon.

Yours,

Samir

Test on unit 2

"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"

Teenagers should use their time in a good way. There are some tips that can help teenagers to feel happy and to achieve their goals. First, they should sleep enough time at least 8 hours. Most of them like staying up late, but it isn't useful for their health. Secondly, it's important for them to make new friends to be happy, but they should choose their friends carefully. After that, they can travel to open places. Nature makes them happier. Finally, it's important for them to remember the good things in their life.

Unit 3

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : nour@gmail.com
To : maha@gmail.com
Subject : My favourite hero

Dear Maha,

I want to tell you about my hero. He's Mohammed Salah. He is a great footballer. He worked very hard and trained a lot to achieve his goal as a famous footballer all over the world. When he was young, he had to travel for long hours to train. He played in Egypt and then he moved to Europe. He played for different teams such as Basil, Roma and Liverpool. He scored many goals. Salah is a good person. He has a big smile and loves all people. Write to me about your hero.

Yours,

Nour

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Our body"

We should keep our bodies healthy. Healthy food, enough sleep and doing sports are very important for our bodies. We should eat different kinds of healthy food to build our bodies. Also, children and young people should sleep well to be healthy. Sports are the most important thing. Young people should practise the sports they prefer. Parents should advise children to look after their bodies to grow well. Also, they should warn them of bad habits like watching too much TV, eating unhealthy food and sleeping late.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Rubbish collectors"

There are some jobs we can't do without them. Rubbish collectors, for example, are very important. The city would be terrible without them. They clean streets, parks and different places around us. We should respect them. We should teach our children to help and keep places clean to help them. They have to work in different places and different times. People should put their rubbish in bins to make their job easier. Rubbish collectors do a great job for us. They are really heroes in the community.

Test on unit 3

"Dr Magdy Yacoub"

We are very proud of Dr Madgy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became a doctor, too. He travelled abroad and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He helped many people to get better. He is very famous for his charity work. In 2008, Magdy Yacoub started his charity for ill children in Aswan. All people like him in Egypt. He is my hero.

Unit 4

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : hussien@gmail.com
To : omar@gmail.com
Subject : An amazing day out

Dear Omar,

I visited Alexandria with my cousins last year. Alexandria is a fantastic city. It is an ancient city. It has some old buildings. I enjoyed visiting Qaitbay Citadel. The view of the sea was very fantastic. I tried fishing in the early morning. There are a lot of activities that can be done there. Alexandria Library is very exciting. My cousins prefer swimming in the sea in the early morning. The weather is very nice. Also, there are very good and famous restaurants. It was a great fun.

Yours,
Hussien

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A visit to the museum"

My visit to the Egyptian Museum last mid-year holiday was very good and useful. The Egyptian Museum is in Cairo. It's full of valuable statues and gold objects. Tourists like visiting it so much. I enjoyed a lot there. There are more than one floor. The guide told us not to touch these objects to keep it safe for our country. I took many photos with some tourists from all over the world. I was very kind to tourists and tried to help them to get around the museum.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : sherif@gmail.com
To : khalid@gmail.com
Subject : Cleopatra's Needle

Dear Khalid,

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see this needle next to the River Thames in London, England. It's more than 20 metres high and weighs about 200,000 kilograms. It's about 3500 years old. The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. Another ship completed the journey to London. The Needle of Cleopatra is a great monument.

Yours,
Sherif

Test on unit 4

"A historic place I visited"

I like visiting historic places so much. I'm very interested in the ancient history. Petra in Jordan is my favourite place. It dates to 300 BCE. It's more than two thousand years old. You must buy a ticket before visiting it. When you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views from some of the higher places are fantastic. The guide warned us to be careful. I enjoyed a lot there. I recommend going there next year. Tourists from all over the world like visiting Petra.

Unit 5

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Charity work I like most"

Charity work is very important for people who need help. My favourite charity works are cleaning my area and helping the disabled. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local area. At the weekend, we pick up the rubbish. Also, I visit a home for old people every week to help the disabled. There are many people who need to be looked after them. I'm very happy when I help them. I like talking to them. Some of the disabled are clever at some games. I respect them so much.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samy@gmail.com
To : hany@gmail.com
Subject : Random acts of kindness

Dear Hany,

I'm very pleased to write this email to you. How are you ? I decided to do one act of kindness every day for three days. First, I bought to my grandfather some of his favourite books from the bookshop on my way to school. He was very surprised, but he was happy and thanked me. After that, I helped an old woman to cross the street. Finally, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old poor man on our street corner. Tell me about acts of kindness you do.

Yours,
Samy

Test on unit 5

"Helping others"

Helping others is a great thing, especially people who need help such as the poor and the disabled. We should teach young people and children how to look after them. You can help others in your local area or by working for charities. I prefer working for charities as their work is organised. Some people can help by donating money to these charities. Others can serve some food or clothes to the poor. I prefer giving help to the disabled. They're very clever.

Unit 6

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"The effect of climate change on the environment"

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. It means droughts and more fires in forests. Also, climate change can affect badly on ice on top of mountains. When ice melts, it causes floods. We should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of the climate change.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My home city"

My home city is Damietta. It's located in the north of Egypt. It has a famous port on the Mediterranean Sea. My city is famous for making furniture. There are many workshops there. Carpenters in Damietta are very clever. They export their products all over the world. Damietta is also famous for sweets which are very delicious. Young people there are proud of their city. You can enjoy the beautiful view of the Nile and the sea at night. It's very beautiful and interesting.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"How to use less water ?"

Saving water is very important as water is the secret of life. We should learn how to use less water. Parents and teachers should show the importance of water to children. There are many ways that can help us to save water. We should learn, for example, how to recycle water. We can use the water from washing to water the plants. Also, we can have short showers to save water. Finally, we can mend all the damaged taps in parks and streets. Some countries use modern ways to irrigate plants.

Test on unit 6

From : waheed@gmail.com
To : tamer@gmail.com
Subject : Recycling at home

Dear Tamer,

How are things ? I want to tell you that recycling at home is very important. A lot of countries make use of recycling things. We can put a rubbish bin in every room. Also, we can separate things that are made of metal from plastic things. Rubbish should be collected every week and goes to special places in the city. We can ask ourselves if these things can be recycled or not. There are many things such as bottles can be used again at home after washing and cleaning them.

Yours,
Waheed

Listening Texts نصوص استماع

Unit 1

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Today's interview is about Sherifa and her family. Sherifa is my best friend. There are five people in Sherifa's family. Sherifa's family get up at 6.30 in the morning.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Sam is sending an email to Dan from Germany. In Germany, school starts very early. So, Sam doesn't have breakfast before school. In Sam's school, they have eight lessons every day.

3 Test on unit 1

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my family. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early.

Unit 2

1 Lessons 1 & 2

A nurse is working in children's ward. A police officer makes sure that people are safe in the streets. A street-food seller is selling delicious food in his food stall.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Adel is a normal teenager, but he often feels worried about things. Adel gets texts from his friends. Adel's friends say that they all do exciting things.

3 Test on unit 2

The street-food seller is parking his food stall here because lots of tourists come this way. He is looking forward to drinking some hot coffee as he is feeling cold.

Unit 3

1 Lessons 1 & 2

The Egyptian handball team are heroes. They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in 2020. The match was against Tunisia. They scored 27 points. They are champions.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Ancient Egyptian doctors helped people with burns. They used to use some of plants to stop infections. We still use these plants today. The Ancient Egyptian doctors were clever.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Mohamed is a clever doctor. He works in a big hospital. He is kind and helpful. He always helps ill people a lot. In 2020, many people became ill.

4 Test on unit 3

Mrs Karima is a nurse. She looks after patients in a hospital. She used to study very hard and work to pay for her studies when she was young.

Unit 4

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Maged visited Abydos last week. He went there with his cousins. They saw ruins in the desert. Maged is not usually interested in history.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

The Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes which are made of wood have 30 squares. Some people didn't have senet boxes. So, they drew the squares on the floor.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Cleopatra's Needle is a large stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England. It is very valuable.

4 Test on unit 4

The Ancient Egyptians were very clever. They used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which taken from the River Nile.

Unit 5

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Today, I'm going on a ride. The weather is very hot today. So, I have to wear a hat and my sunglasses. I can see many cars in the streets.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Mr Othman is our neighbour. He helped me pass my English exams. He was teaching at a preparatory school. He used his old schoolbooks to help me.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Last Friday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old man who was sitting on the street corner. The old man was happy and gave me a big smile.

4 Test on unit 5

Fareeda Rashwan is 32 years old. She is a businesswoman. She donated two million pounds to charities in her city to help people, who need it. She is very kind and helpful.

Unit 6

1 Lessons 3 & 4

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Lots of cotton is grown there. It is visited by thousands of people every year.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last weekend, ten students helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. The students were sad to find so much rubbish.

3 Test on unit 6

My home city is El-Minya. It is located near the Nile. It is known for its delicious black honey. There are many ancient monuments and buildings there. My city is very beautiful.

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE



FREE PART

NEW HELLO!

By a group of supervisors

Quick Look SKILLS

ملحق المهارات و المتابعة
للصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

2nd Prep.
2021

FIRST TERM

Contents

Part 1

Master Your Vocabulary

مهارة إتقان المفردات اللغوية

كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة إتقان المفردات اللغوية

١ فلسفة الأعداد :

- تم إعداد هذا الجزء ليساعدك علي تذكر المفردات اللغوية بشكل أسرع وأسهل، ويرتكز علي استخدام / استغلال الذاكرة البصرية لديك لحفظ أكبر عدد من المفردات.
- وللاستفادة القصوى من قدرتك البصرية تم اختيار المفردات المحورية لكل درسين في كل وحدة للتدريب عليها.

٢ كيفية الاستخدام

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية عدة مرات بتأنى حتي تنطبع حروف المفردة فى ذاكرتك.

الخطوة الثانية : بعد اداء الخطوة الأولى قم بحل التدريب مباشرة لاسترجاع ما تم قراءته دون حفظ.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن واحفظ المفردات اللغوية جيدًا بطريقتك المعتادة. ثم قم بأداء التدريب المعد من كتاب الطالب وقيم أداءك لتتأكد من إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية.



Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

sofa	كنبة - أريكة	interests	اهتمامات	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
text (v)	يرسل رسالة نصية	routine	نظام ثابت (روتين)	interview	حوار/مقابلة رسمية
country	دولة	daily	يوميًا	prefer	يُفضل

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

weekend - the same - prefer - routine - interview

1. I .... swimming to playing football.
2. Soha's family go to Alexandria at the ....
3. Going to school is a daily .... for me.
4. Ali is having an .... for the job of the engineer.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt is a big .... in the Middle East and in Africa.
   a. town b. city c. country d. village
2. Ahmed plays football every day. He goes to the club ....
   a. monthly b. yearly c. weekly d. daily
3. This .... is comfortable. Three people can sit on it.
   a. chair b. table c. sofa d. armchair
4. Can you .... my brother for me as my phone is not working ?
   a. next b. text c. fix d. mix

Unit 1 — Lessons 3 & 4

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

feed	يُطعم / يغذى	terrible	فظيع	tap	حنفية مياه
share	يشارك / يتقاسم	prison	سجن	picnic	نزهة خلوية
attractive	جذاب	railway line	خط سكة حديد	mountain	جبل

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

railway - prison - terrible - mountain - picnic

1. Thieves are taken to ....
2. My family and I usually have a .... at the weekend.
3. This food is bad. It tastes ....
4. The .... is very high, but I like climbing.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Al Azhar Park is a/an .... place. Children like playing there.
   a. terrible b. bad c. ugly d. attractive
2. My brother and I .... the same room.
   a. share b. train c. score d. carry
3. .... the birds is my favourite hobby.
   a. Reading b. Weeding c. Feeding d. Leading
4. I turned on the .... to wash my face.
   a. tap b. tape c. fan d. tube

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

armchair	كرسى ذو ذراعين	lamp	لمبة (مصباح كهربائى)	penfriend	صديق مراسلة
curtains	ستائر	mirror	مرآة	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
carpet	سجادة	wardrobe	دولاب للملابس	practise	يمارس

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

nature reserves - penfriend - practise - wardrobe - mirror

1. I've an American .... I didn't meet him before.
2. We should protect .... to help the environment.
3. My sister has many dresses in her ....
4. Pupils should .... English outside school.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. There isn't enough light. I have to change this ....
   a. lamb b. lamp c. lip d. limb
2. Move the .... to keep the light out.
   a. carpets b. curtains c. tables d. chairs
3. I can see myself when I look at the ....
   a. table b. wardrobe c. mirror d. wall
4. This .... is comfortable. It's for one person.
   a. sofa b. armchair c. cupboard d. table

Unit 2 — Lessons 1 & 2

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

computer engineer مهندس كمبيوتر	ward عنبر (فى مستشفى)	sign language لغة الاشارة
shop worker عامل فى محل	look forward to يتطلع الى	repair يُصلح
street - food seller بائع أطعمة (فى الشارع) متجول	food stall كشك لبيع أطعمة	communicate يتواصل

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

◎ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

communicate - repair - sign language - food stall - ward

1. Deaf people use .... to communicate.
2. I bought some biscuits from a .... on the street corner.
3. Samar works as a doctor in the children's .... in El Salam hospital.
4. My car broke down. Can you .... it, please ?

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

◎ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Hassan .... forward to visiting Paris one day.
   a. takes b. looks c. makes d. gives
2. You shouldn't eat much food from a .... - food seller. It's unhealthy.
   a. way b. street c. road d. path
3. My laptop doesn't work. I need a .... to repair it.
   a. mechanic b. computer engineer
   c. doctor d. teacher
4. The .... helps the owner of the supermarket in his work.
   a. vet b. nurse c. shop worker d. pilot

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

loudly	بصوت عال	foreground	مقدمة	teenagers	مراهقين
carefully	بحرص	striped	مخطط	airport	مطار
background	خلفية	happiness	سعادة	wedding	حفل زفاف

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

wedding - airport - teenagers - happiness - striped

1. Sadness is the opposite of ....
2. People whose ages from 13 to 19 are called ....
3. You can catch a plane from the ....
4. Soha's .... party was great. We enjoyed it a lot.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The skin of a zebra is ....
   a. lined b. striped c. spotted d. comfortable
2. My mother and my sister are sitting under a tree in the .... of the photo.
   a. ground b. playground c. foreground d. gram
3. Don't speak .... The baby is asleep.
   a. carefully b. slowly c. hungrily d. loudly
4. The last boy in the class is in the ....
   a. middle b. background c. foreground d. front

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

congratulations	مبروك	excited	متحمس / منفعل	difficult	صعب
worry	يقلق	news	أخبار	empathy	تعاطف
trip	رحلة قصيرة	pity	شئ مؤسف أو محزن	park	يركن (سيارة)

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

park - empathy - difficult - trip - news

1. Well done, Tarek! That's great .... !
2. You should show .... to the poor people.
3. You mustn't .... your car here. It is not allowed.
4. Easy is the opposite of ....

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When someone passes his exam, we say ".............." to him.
   a. sorry b. thank you
   c. congratulations d. please
2. My uncle went to London on a business ....
   a. picnic b. journey c. trip d. holiday
3. Don't .... I'll help you with your homework.
   a. take b. write c. worry d. swim
4. I was very .... to know my exam results.
   a. quick b. excited c. slow d. ugly

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية.

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

patron راعٍ/كفيل	sports coach مدرب رياضى	senior الأكبر سنًا / الأعلى مرتبة
nuclear scientist عالم نووى	competitions مسابقات	hero بطل
surgeon جراح	junior ناشىء	handball كرة اليد

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

senior - hero - junior - competitions

1. When he was 10, he played football in the .... team.
2. Young people like to join sports ....
3. My grandfather is my .... He helps poor people a lot.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Princess Fatma Ismail became a .... of Egypt's first national university. She gave a lot of money to open it.
   a. patron b. scientist c. coach d. surgeon
2. A .... teaches people how to play a sport or improve their skills.
   a. pilot b. teacher c. driver d. sports coach
3. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first female .... scientist .
   a. nuclear b. chemistry c. biology d. physics
4. A .... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a. nurse b. junior c. vet d. surgeon

Unit 3 — Lessons 3 & 4

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

• يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

countryside	الريف	proud	فخور	heart	قلب
emergency	طوارئ	volunteer	متطوع	lungs	رئتين
natural disaster	كوارث طبيعية	brain	مخ	stomach	معدة

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

stomach - lungs - heart - brain - volunteer

1. The .... pumps blood around the body.
2. A .... is someone who works for no money to help people.
3. The .... take in air and help us to breathe.
4. If you eat a lot, your .... will hurt.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you want to live in the city or in the .... ?
   a. sea b. river c. countryside d. town
2. Earthquakes and volcanoes are natural ....
   a. disasters b. lakes c. floods d. rivers
3. Call the police when there's a / an ....
   a. party b. emergency c. match d. exam
4. We are very .... of our country. We like it so much.
   a. ashamed b. crazy c. proud d. pleased

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

understand	يفهم	university	جامعة	statue	تمثال
heroic	بطولى	education	التعليم	rubbish collectors	جامعي قمامة
nursing manager	مدير تمريض	famous	مشهور	get married	يتزوج

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

rubbish - statues - get married - famous - Education

1. .... is an important thing for most people.
2. My brother will .... next week. It will be a fantastic wedding.
3. Luxor is .... for its temples.
4. The Ancient Egyptians built many .... in Ancient Egypt.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I can't .... this lesson, can you repeat it, sir ?
   a. forget b. understand c. visit d. welcome
2. Saving children from a dangerous fire is a .... act.
   a. bad b. normal c. heroic d. poor
3. My mother is a nursing .... She helps to teach younger nurses.
   a. assistant b. manager c. coach d. visitor
4. People start working after graduating التخرج from ....
   a. university b. primary school
   c. preparatory school d. secondary school

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية.

historic	تاريخي	temple	معبد	guide	مرشد
arch	مدخل مقوس - قنطرة	stadium	استاد	view	منظر/رؤية
entrance	مدخل	ancient	قديم/عتيق	mosque	مسجد
castle	قلعة	win	يفوز	awesome	رائع/مثير
theatre	مسرح	ruins	أطلال / آثار غير مكتملة		

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

guide - awesome - Ruins - Stadium - Temple

1. Karnak .... is a great ancient building.
2. Cairo .... is the home of the Egyptian football.
3. .... are incomplete ancient buildings.
4. The place is .... It's really amazing!

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The Great Pyramid is an important .... monument.
   a. modern b. new c. historic d. unreal
2. The .... can be an entrance to another place.
   a. temple b. arch c. stadium d. theatre
3. You can enjoy watching amazing plays in the ....
   a. cinema b. theatre c. stadium d. hospital
4. The tour .... tells the tourists about historic places.
   a. vet b. guide c. teacher d. scientist

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية.
Step 1 Read the Vocabulary

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

coins	عملات معدنية	customer	زبون/ عميل	figure	تمثال/نموذج (شخص)
necklace	عقد	design	يصمم / تصميم	mask	قناع
vase	زهرية (إناء للزينة)	papyrus	ورق بردى	ingredients	مكونات / مقادير

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.
Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

ingredients - mask - figures - papyrus - designs

1. The mirrors were metal and had interesting .... in Ancient Egypt.
2. The Ancient Egyptians used .... for writing.
3. The tomb contains many golden ....
4. The .... of Tutankhamun is a fantastic object.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية.
Step 3 Master your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a. Masks b. Figures c. Cans d. Coins
2. The pot used for holding flowers is called a ....
   a. necklace b. vase c. bowl d. dish
3. The jewellery women wear around their necks are called ....
   a. necklaces b. rings c. coins d. watches
4. Can you tell me the .... of koshari ?
   a. flavours b. ingredients c. dishes d. classes

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

earthquake	زلزال	company	شركة	stone	حجر
tourism	السياحة	damage	يحطم / يتلف	sink	يغوص / يغرق
pollution	التلوث	needle	مسلة (حجرية)	British	بريطاني

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

British - sank - stones - Needle - damage

1. Cleopatra's .... is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.
2. .... people live in England.
3. It was stormy and the ship ....
4. The Sphinx was made of large ....

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I look forward to working in a big ....
   a. tank b. stone c. company d. pot
2. .... is very important for Egypt. It brings a lot of money.
   a. Earthquake b. Tourism c. Flood d. Disaster
3. The .... causes a lot of damage for the Earth's surface.
   a. tourism b. earthquake c. needle d. holiday
4. .... is a great problem for the environment. We should solve it.
   a. Tourism b. Pollution c. Rain d. Cleaning

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات.

put away	يضع الشئ فى مكانه	strangers	غرباء	wash up	يغسل (الأوانى)
messy	فوضوى	fantastic	رائع	random	عشوائى/غير مخطط
kindness	حسن المعاملة/ عطف	tidy up	يرتب/ينظم	smile	يبتسم/ابتسامة

الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

tidy - smile - random - fantastic - strangers

1. They gave all the players .... tests to check their health.
2. I like the .... on my grandmother's face.
3. Heba doesn't speak in front of .... She's shy.
4. She's lucky because I help her to .... up her room.

الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The teacher was very angry when he found the class ....
   a. tidy　b. clean　c. messy　d. arranged
2. My mother always helps me .... away my clothes.
   a. put　b. wash　c. look　d. cook
3. .... of people makes you love and respect them.
   a. Happiness　b. Sadness　c. Kindness　d. Illness
4. It's .... to meet your friend after a long time.
   a. ugly　b. bad　c. fantastic　d. dirty

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى: اقرأ المفردات الكلمية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية فى الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

community	مجتمع	behave	يتصرف / يسلك	servant	خادم
disabled	عاجز - قعيد	princess	أميرة	beggar	متسول
donate	يتبرع	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	pick up	يلتقط
volunteer	متطوع	cruel	قاس		

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية: تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

beggar - servant - boarding school - princess - cruel

1. You shouldn't be .... with young children.
2. The daughter of the king and the queen is called the ....
3. The .... works in someone's home.
4. The .... asks people for food and money.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة: اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All people should help the .... They need our help.
   a. able b. unabled c. disabled d. abled
2. People .... money to the Food Bank to buy food for the poor.
   a. made b. gave c. donated d. took
3. My parents advised me to .... well with others.
   a. go b. take c. behave d. make
4. A .... school is a school where the students live and learn at the same time.
   a. bread b. boarding c. broading d. breeding

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى: اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

donation	تبرع	passport	جواز سفر	decision	قرار
blog	مدونة	helpful	متعاون	reason	سبب / مبرر
agree	يوافق	opinion	رأى	suggestion	اقتراح

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية: تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

suggestion - reason - decision - blog - helpful

1. On my ...., I can post anything about me.
2. You should take the right ....
3. Ali is very .... All people like him.
4. Visiting Alexandria was my ....

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary الخطوة الثالثة: اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التى قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You have to get a .... before travelling abroad.
   a. passport b. card c. tablet d. sign
2. .... to charities is a great act of kindness.
   a. Donation b. Abbreviation c. Taking d. Deciding
3. In my ...., that car is too expensive.
   a. decision b. reason c. opinion d. blog
4. What is the .... for coming early ?
   a. cause b. reason c. pollution d. meaning

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

polluted	ملوث	drought	جفاف	flood	فيضان
line graph	خط بياني	chart	مخطط (بياني)	melt	يذوب / ينصهر
green	ملائم للبيئة	environment	البيئة	climate change	تغير مناخي
transport	النقل / المواصلات	air pollution	تلوث الهواء		

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

polluted - chart - green - Climate change - melt

1. .... affects the environment and causes some problems.
2. Bikes are a .... form of transport.
3. The canal is more .... than the river.
4. Ice in the North Pole will .... because of climate change.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some countries have no rain, so they have ....
   a. flood b. drought c. pollution d. volcano
2. People should stop the danger of ....
   a. success b. relaxing c. air pollution d. learning
3. The High Dam protects Egypt from ....
   a. pollution b. floods c. farming d. rain
4. The natural world where a person, an animal or a plant lives is called the ....
   a. pollution b. environment c. drought d. flood

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

canal	قناة (مائية)	wheat	قمح	respect	يحترم
cotton	قطن	(be) located	يقع في (مكان)	wildlife	الحياة البرية
mosque	مسجد	protect	يحمي	known for	معروف بـ

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

◎ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

known - wildlife - respect - protect - located

1. Aswan is .... in the south of Egypt.
2. We should .... our teachers and parents.
3. Minya is .... for its delicious honey.
4. Animals and plants are examples of ....

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية واتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار.

◎ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Egypt is famous for growing a special kind of .... plants used for making clothes.
   a. wheat b. cotton c. corn d. rice
2. A .... is a building where you can pray.
   a. school b. mosque c. hospital d. library
3. Suez .... in Egypt is very important for the whole world.
   a. River b. Sea c. Canal d. Lake
4. Bread is made from ....
   a. wheat b. cheese c. sugar d. sweets

Unit 6 — Lessons 5 & 6

Step 1 Read the Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية

* يقرأ الطالب هذه الكلمات المحورية في الدرس والاختبارات عدة مرات

collect	يجمع	chocolate	شيكولاتة	recycle	يعيد تدوير
riverbank	ضفة نهر	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	coloured	ملون
remind	يذكر	wash	يغسل		

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

coloured - recycle - wash - souvenirs - Chocolate

1. .... cake is my favourite dessert.
2. Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt.
3. I .... cucumbers خيار before eating them.
4. We should .... our rubbish to make use of it.

Step 3 Master your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثالثة : اتقن المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بعد التدريب على تلك المفردات المحورية وإتقانها وحفظها، بحل الجمل التي قد تكون موضع اختبار.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... stamps is my favourite hobby
   a. Making b. Giving c. Collecting d. Recycling
2. There are two men on the .... trying to catch fish.
   a. desert b. riverbank c. jungle d. mountain
3. Soha .... her sister to visit her aunt last Monday.
   a. remembered b. reminded c. revised d. repeated
4. .... clothes are beautiful and nice.
   a. Worn b. Coloured c. Dirty d. Bad

Part 2 Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابة

كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

١ أتبع الخطوات التالية :

الخطوة الأولــى : تهيئة الطالب للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة لكل وحدة والتدرب على المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

الخطوة الثانيــة : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية للوحدة.

الخطوة الثالثــة : التدرب على تكملة شبكة أفكار لتكوين جمل للكتابة.

الخطوة الرابعــة : تكوين شبكة أفكار خاصة بالطالب.

الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

٢ قيّم نفسك من حيث :

١. تنظيم وترابط الأفكار.
٢. اختيار المفردات اللغوية المناسبة.
٣. التهجى وعلامات الترقيم المناسبة والقواعد اللغوية.



Unit 1 Coming home

Step 1 Warm Up — الخطوة الأولى تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

- يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها

You have studied these words in Unit 1 about : Daily routines / A typical day of someone's life / Description of your home / Your bedroom

لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية فى الوحدة الأولى عن : أعمال روتينية يومية / يوم نموذجى فى حياة شخص ما / وصف المنزل الخاص بك / غرفة النوم الخاصة بك.

Read and match the words with their meanings.

1. ☐ armchair	a. a piece of furniture with drawers to put things in
2. ☐ basin	b. beautiful / nice to look at
3. ☐ block of flats	c. a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself
4. ☐ chest of drawers	d. a large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on
5. ☐ attractive	e. a tall building with more than one floor with flats for people to live in
6. ☐ lamp	f. something that gives light
7. ☐ mirror	g. your usual way of doing things especially when you do them in a fixed order at the same time
8. ☐ routine	h. a bowl for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc.

الخطوة الثانية التدريب على القواعد اللغوية

Step 2 Grammar Practice

• يقوم الطالب بالتدريب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

The Present Simple Tense: زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة	Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية	Yes / No questions الجمل الاستفهامية
(I / You / They / We) **work** hard.	(I / You / They / We) **don't work** hard.	**Do** (I/you/they/we) **work** hard? – Yes, + فاعل + do. – No, + فاعل + don't.
(He/She) **works** hard.	(He/She) **doesn't work** hard.	**Does** (he / she) **work** hard? – Yes, + فاعل + does. – No, + فاعل + doesn't.

Adverbs of frequency: ظروف التكرار

Subject +	always ***** usually **** often *** sometimes ** never	+ inf. / inf. + s,es,ies

Circle the correct word :

1. It is often / never very cold in summer.
2. Does / Do Mariam listen to music on the bus ? - Yes, she does.
3. Do you have / had any brothers and sisters ?
4. What do you usually do / does at the weekend ?

Step 3 Writing Practice

الخطوة الثالثة : التدرب على الكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها فى الوحدة.

Choose and complete the idea web :

share – face – feed – block – sometimes – bed

My daily routine

1. I live in a large flat in a .... of flats.
2. I get up early and wash my ....
3. I .... help my brother and sister to do their homework.
4. I .... a room with my sister.
5. When I get home from school, I .... the chickens.
6. I go to .... at 10:00 p.m.

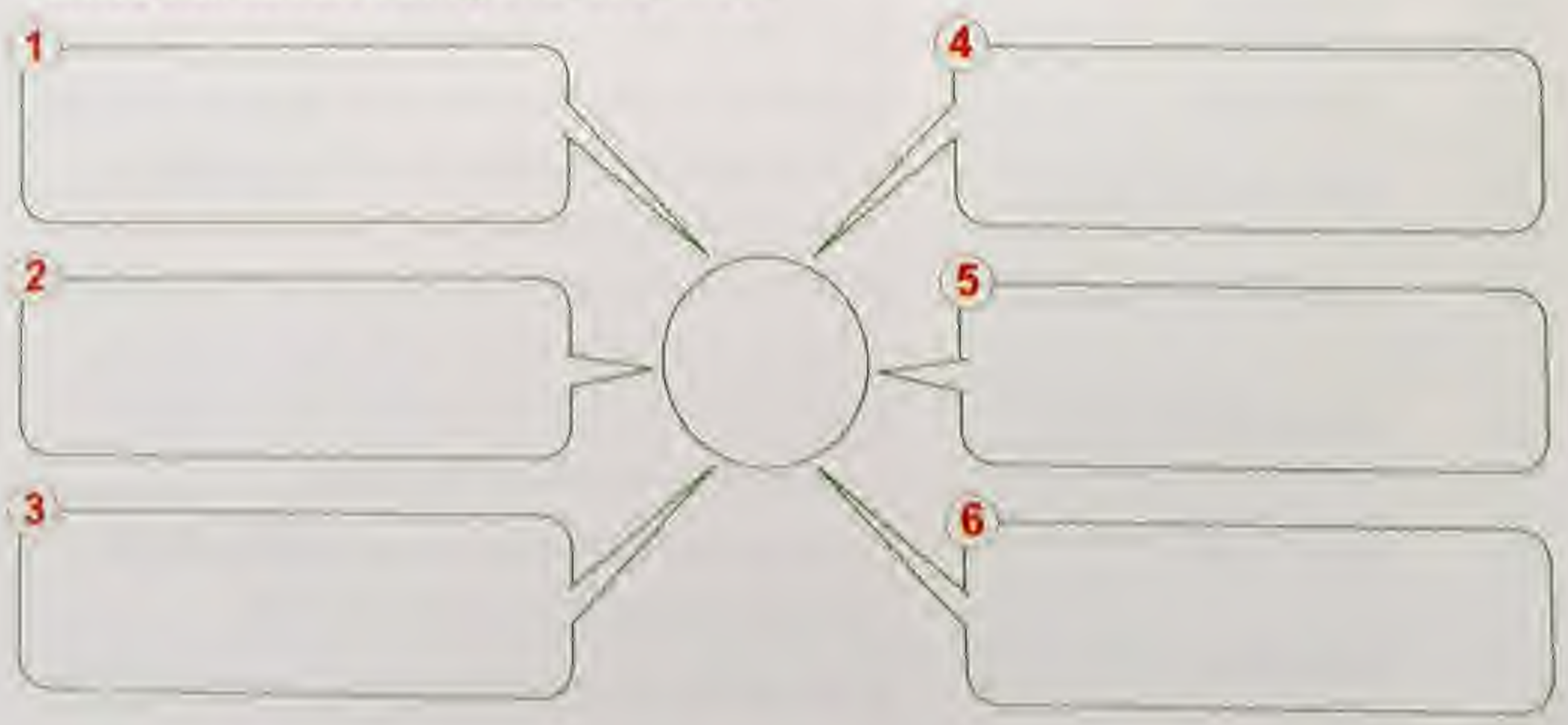
Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها.

Make your idea web about : Your daily routines.

Write sentences using the idea web.



Part 2

الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة موضوعك.

Step 5 Your writing

* بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرًا على كتابة موضوع إنشائي.

⊙ **Look at your idea web in step 4, then write your paragraph.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

بعد كتابة الفقرة، قيم نفسك.

✓ Writing check

- Organization التنظيم	☐	- Spelling التهجي	☐
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار	☐	- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم	☐
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية	☐	- Grammar القواعد اللغوية	☐

Unit 2 How are you feeling ?

Step 1 Warm Up

الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها.

➲ **You have studied these words in Unit 2 about :**

Different jobs/Weekend activities / How to make teenagers happy / Sign language

➲ لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة الثانية عن :

الوظائف المختلفة / أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع / كيف تُسعد المراهقين / لغة الإشارة

⊙ **Read and match the words with their meanings.**

1. ☐ grateful	a. a boy or girl aged 13-19
2. ☐ teenager	b. feeling happy about the good things in your life
3. ☐ call-centre worker	c. This person prepares food for people to eat in the street.
4. ☐ computer engineer	d. This person speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems.
5. ☐ street-food seller	e. you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system
6. ☐ food stall	f. a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food
7. ☐ empathy	g. the ability to understand how someone feels

Step 2 Grammar Practice الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

1 The Present Continuous Tense : زمن المضارع المستمر

Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة	Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية	Yes / No Question السؤال بهل ... ؟
(I) **am ('m)** work**ing** hard.	(I) **am** not work**ing** hard.	**Am** I **working** hard?
(He/She) **is ('s)** work**ing** hard.	(He/She) **is not (isn't)** work**ing** hard.	**Is** (he/she) **working** hard?
(You/They/We) **are ('re)** work**ing** hard.	(You/They/We) **are not (aren't)** work**ing** hard.	**Are** (you/they/we) **working** hard?

2 Adverbs of Manner : ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

We use adverbs of manner to describe **how** we do the action of a verb.

تستخدم ظروف الحال (الكيفية) لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل.

يتكون ظرف الحال (الكيفية) بإضافة (**ly – ily**) إلى الصفة :

quick ⟶ quick**ly**
easy ⟶ eas**ily**
terrible ⟶ terrib**ly**
sensible ⟶ sensib**ly**
loud ⟶ loud**ly**
lazy ⟶ laz**ily**

Some adverbs are irregular : هناك بعض الصفات غير منتظمة لا يضاف إليها (**ly**) وتحفظ :

good ⟶ well
hard ⟶ hard
fast ⟶ fast

⊙ Circle the correct word :

1. Mr Adel explains / is explaining the lesson at the moment.
2. Eman and her neighbours repair / are repairing Mr Adel flat now.
3. My sister speaks very quietly / quiet.
4. We're sitting careful / carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp.

Step 3 Writing Practice

الخطوة الثالثة : التدرب على الكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها فى الوحدة.

⊙ Choose and complete the idea web :

street - food seller - repair - workers - looking - Police officers - call-centre worker

Different jobs

1. Nurses are .... after patients at hospital.
2. .... are driving around the city to make sure that people are safe in streets.
3. The .... is parking his food stall and he is waiting for people.
4. Now, I'm calling the computer engineer to .... my laptop.
5. Shop .... are important for buying and selling in the city centre.
6. The .... speaks to people on the phone.

Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار للكتابة.

* يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها.

⊙ Make your idea web about : Weekend activities.
Write sentences using the idea web.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة موضوع

* بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرا على كتابة موضوع إنشائي

◎ **Look at your idea web in step 4, then write your paragraph.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

✓ Writing check

بعد كتابة الفقرة قيم نفسك.

- Organization التنظيم ☐	- Spelling التهجي ☐
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار ☐	- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم ☐
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية ☐	- Grammar القواعد اللغوية ☐

Unit 3 Great jobs

Step 1 Warm up

الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها.

➲ **You have studied these words in Unit 3 about :**

Your favourite hero / Heroes / Dr Magdy Yacoub / Ancient Egyptian doctors / A great job to do / What makes a hero

➲ لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية فى الوحدة الثالثة عن :

البطل المفضل لديك / الأبطال / دكتور مجدى يعقوب / أطباء المصريون القدماء / وظيفة عظيمة يجب القيام بها / ما الذى يصنع البطل

Part 2

* **Read and match the words with their meanings.**

1. ( ) surgeon	a. someone teaches people how to play or improve a sport
2. ( ) sports coach	b. knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill
3. ( ) emergency	c. events when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
4. ( ) competitions	d. someone who works for no money to help people
5. ( ) proud	e. for older people
6. ( ) senior	f. for younger people
7. ( ) volunteer	g. when something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about
8. ( ) junior	h. feeling happy about something you have done or are connected with

Step 2 Grammar Practice الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة

The Past Simple Tense (to be) : زمن الماضي البسيط مع الفعل (يكون)

Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة	Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية
(You/They/We) **were** frightened of the cave.	(You/They/We) **were not (weren't)** frightened of the cave.
(I/He/She/It) **was** frightened of the cave.	(I/He/She/It) **was not (wasn't)** frightened of the cave.

The Past Simple Tense (other verbs) : زمن الماضي البسيط (الأفعال الأخرى)

		Affirmative	Negative
Regular verbs	I/ You/ They/ We / He/She/It	visited studied	did not (didn't) visit did not (didn't) study
Irregular verbs		went swam slept	did not (didn't) go did not (didn't) swim did not (didn't) sleep

اعتاد على

Used to + (inf) مصدر الفعل

Use **used to** to talk about habits or states that were true in the past but are not true now.

استخدم (used to) للحديث عن العادات والأوضاع العامة التى كانت تحدث بانتظام فى الماضى ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.

Positive statements : He **used to** live in the countryside.
Negative statements : I didn't **use to** know much about my family history.
Questions : Did he **use to** live in Cairo ? Yes, he did./ No, he didn't.
Where did he **use to** live ?

Circle the correct word :

1. Dr Magdy Yacoub is / was born in 1935.
2. Dr Magdy Yacoub stops / stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.
3. Yasser's uncle use to / used to live in Tunisia.
4. Before he got married, Yasser's dad doesn't / didn't use to live in Cairo.

Step 3 Writing Practice الخطوة الثالثة : التدرب على الكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها فى الوحدة.

Choose and complete the idea web :

charity – die – proud – hearts – healthy – special

Magdy Yacoub

1. We should all be .... of Magdy Yacoub.
2. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to ....
3. Dr Magdy Yacoub started a .... for ill children in Aswan.
4. Dr Magdy Yacoub helped to give people new .... for the first time.
5. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a .... hospital in London.
6. Now ill children can live .... lives.

Part 2

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار للكتابة

Step 4 Your idea web

* يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها

- Make your idea web about : Your favourite hero
  Write sentences using the idea web.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة موضوع.

Step 5 Your writing

* بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرًا على كتابة موضوع إنشائى.

- **Look at your idea web in step 4, then write your paragraph.**

....
....
....
....
....
....

Writing check

بعد كتابة الفقرة قيم نفسك.

- Spelling التهجى ☐
- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم ☐
- Grammar القواعد اللغوية ☐
- Organization التنظيم ☐
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار ☐
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية ☐

Unit 4 Into the past

Step 1 Warm Up الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها

You have studied these words in Unit 4 about :
Your favourite historic place / A trip to a museum / Object from Egypt's past

لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية فى الوحدة الرابعة عن :
مكان تاريخي مفضل لديك / رحلة إلى متحف / أشياء من الحضارة المصرية القديمة

Read and match the words with their meanings.

1. ☐ arch	a. a type of mud
2. ☐ awesome	b. connected with history or with the past
3. ☐ clay	c. a curved (half circle) part of a building
4. ☐ historic	d. very good, great
5. ☐ mask	e. a type of paper made from plants that was used in Ancient Egypt
6. ☐ papyrus	f. something that you wear to cover part or all of your face

Step 2 Grammar Practice الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التى تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة

1. The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

While / As / Just as بينما / أثناء past continuous tense (زمن الماضى المستمر) , past simple Tense (زمن الماضى البسيط)

ex. - While mum was cooking , grandfather arrived.

past continuous tense (زمن الماضى المستمر) — while / as / just as — past simple tense (زمن الماضى البسيط)

ex. - The light went out as Ali was reading a book.

while / as / just as	past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر	,	past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. - While Nada was doing her homework, Mohamed was playing football.

when عندما	past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط	,	past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. - When I saw Ahmed, he was riding a bike.

past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر	when	past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. - Ali was reading a book when the light went out.

2. Expressing rules : الحديث عن القواعد / القوانين

subject فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. يجب / لا يجب

- You must be quiet in the library.
- You mustn't eat or drink during lessons.

Circle the correct word :

1. You must / mustn't have a shower before you swim.
2. In a museum, you mustn't / must touch the objects.
3. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I see / saw my friend Amir.
4. I dropped my bag on the floor while I took / was taking a photo.

Step 3 Writing Practice

الخطوة الثالثة : التدريب على الكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها في الوحدة

Choose and complete the idea web:

clay - senet - life - mirrors - had - protected

Objects from Egypt's past

1. Objects from the past can help us to understand what .... was like many years ago.
2. The Ancient Egyptians used .... to help them paint around their eyes.
3. The paint .... their eyes from the sun and kept away insects.
4. They used pots and bowls made of .... to make food.
5. The Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like ....
6. The game .... boxes of 30 squares.

Step 4 Your idea web

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها.

Make your idea web about : A trip to a museum.
Write sentences using the idea web.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

Step 5 Your writing

الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة موضوع

* بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرًا على كتابة موضوع إنشائى

■ Look at your idea web in step 4, then write your paragraph.

....
....
....
....
....
....

Writing check

بعد كتابة الفقرة قيم نفسك

- Organization التنظيم ☐	- Spelling التهجى ☐
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار ☐	- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم ☐
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية ☐	- Grammar القواعد اللغوية ☐

Unit 5 Helping you , helping me

Step 1 Warm Up

الخطوة الأولى : تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها.

➲ **You have studied these words in Unit 5 about :**

Working for charities / Voluntary work / Jobs in the house / Random acts of kindness

➲ لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية فى الوحدة الخامسة عن :
العمل فى الجمعيات الخيرية / الأعمال الخيرية / وظائف بالمنزل / القيام بأعمال خير غير متوقعة (عشوائية)

Read and match the words with their meanings.

1. ( ) beggar	a. do things in a particular way
2. ( ) behave	b. an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people
3. ( ) charity	c. not able to use part of the body well
4. ( ) community	d. give money, food, clothes, etc to help a person or an organisation
5. ( ) cruel	e. all people who live in a particular area, country, etc
6. ( ) disabled	f. a poor person who lives by asking other people for money or food
7. ( ) donate	g. very unkind

Step 2 Grammar Practice الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة.

1 We use (has to/have to + inf.) to say that something is necessary.
عندما يكون هناك شيئًا ضروري.
- I have to study this evening.

2 We use (doesn't / don't have to + inf.) to say that something isn't necessary.
عندما يكون هناك شيئًا غير ضروري.
- It's a holiday today. We don't have to go to school.

3 We use (should / shouldn't + inf.) to advise people. عندما ننصح الأشخاص.
- We should ask the shopkeeper to look after the shop.

4 **who , which , that , where**

Use "who, which, that" and "where" to help identify a person, thing or place. Use **who** for people, **which/that** for things and **where** for places.

Mrs Zaki is the teacher **who** helped me the most when I started learning at this school.

- The **present that / which** I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.
- Alexandria is the city **where** both my big sisters are studying.

Part 2

الخطوة الثالثة : التدريب على الكتابة

Step 3 Writing Practice

• يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها في الوحدة

⊙ Choose and complete the idea web :

community - who - donate - beggar - kindness - charity

Working for a charity

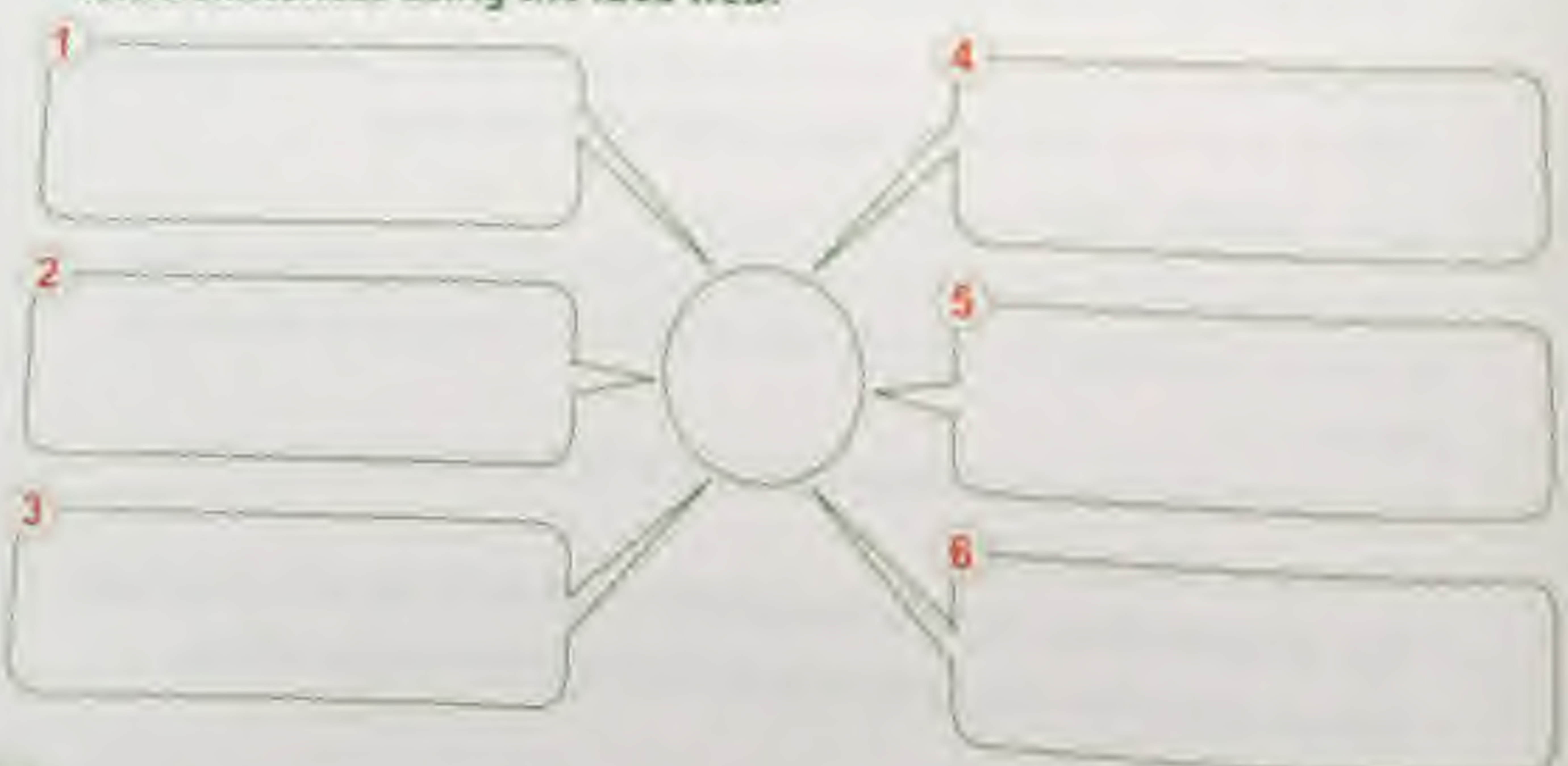
1. I work as a volunteer for a .... which helps to clean our local beaches.
2. I think it is good to help people in the ....
3. I visit a home for old people .... are disabled as it's difficult for their families to help them.
4. People .... money to animal charities to buy food and medicine for sick animals.
5. Also, when I see a .... in the street, I give him/her food and money.
6. These are called random acts of ....

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار الكتابة

Step 4 Your idea web

• يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به لتكوين جمل باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها

⊙ Make your idea web about : Voluntary work
Write sentences using the idea web.



Step [illegible] Your writing

[illegible]

- Look at your idea web in step [illegible], then write your paragraph.

✓ Writing check

بعد كتابة الفقرة، قيم نفسك

- Organization التنظيم
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية
- Spelling التهجي
- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم
- Grammar القواعد اللغوية

Unit 6 Different environments

Step 1 Warm Up

الخطوة الأولى: تهيئة الطالب للكتابة

- يقوم الطالب باسترجاع المفردات اللغوية الهامة من خلال توصيل المفردات اللغوية بتعريفاتها

➲ **You have studied these words in Unit 6 about :**

Climate change / Green energy / Helping our planet / Spotlight on famous places / How to attract tourists to visit Egypt / How to keep the environment clean / A boat trip / The effect of pollution on the environment

➲ لقد درست هذه المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة السادسة عن

التغيير المناخي / الطاقة المحافظة على البيئة / مساعدة كوكبنا / تسليط الأضواء على أماكن مشهورة / كيفية جذب السياح لزيارة مصر / كيفية الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة / رحلة بالقارب / تأثير التلوث على البيئة

Ⓐ **Read and match the words with their meanings.**

1. ( ) air pollution	a. changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing
2. ( ) climate change	b. when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry
3. ( ) drought	c. dirt and dangerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic
4. ( ) flood	d. a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before
5. ( ) polluted	e. made dirty or dangerous by chemicals or other things
6. ( ) locate	f. the business of providing places to stay and things to do for people who are on holiday
7. ( ) tourism	g. find or discover the exact position of something

Step 2 Grammar Practice الخطوة الثانية : التدرب على القواعد اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على القواعد اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة التي تمكنه من مهارة الكتابة

1. Comparatives : المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة

Short adjectives صفات قصيرة		Long adjectives صفات طويلة	
quiet	quiet**er**	careful	**more** careful
old	old**er**	beautiful	**more** beautiful

- May was dry last year, but June was dri**er**.
- Is today hott**er** than yesterday ?
- This book is bad, but the other book is **worse**.

2. (not) as + (adj.) as : تستخدم عند التساوي وعدم التساوي في الصفة

- Droughts are as serious as floods.
- Australia isn't as hot as Africa.

The Present Simple Passive صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

object + am / is / are + p.p (by + subject)

People **grow** lots of cotton in the area.	(active)
- Lots of cotton **is grown** in the area (by people)	(passive)
We **know** Tanta for its delicious sweets.	(active)
- Tanta **is known** for its delicious sweets (by us)	(passive)

⊙ Circle the correct word :

1. People think that the seats on the new buses are **green/greener** than the old buses.
2. Cars are more comfortable **than/then** bikes.
3. Mount Kenya is not as **high/higher** as Mount Kilimanjaro.
4. The Red Sea is **visited/visiting** by tourists from around the world.
5. Sidi Bou Said is **locate/located** in north Tunisia. It is known.

Step 3 Writing Practice الخطوة الثالثة : التدرب على الكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكملة شبكة الأفكار المعطاة له باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى درسها فى الوحدة.

⊙ Choose and complete the idea web :

located - grown - interesting - city - delicious - monuments

Spot light on a famous place

1. My home .... is Minya.
2. It is .... near the Nile.
3. Lots of food is .... in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.
4. The city is known for its .... black honey.
5. Many ancient .... and buildings are found in the city.
6. My city is very ....

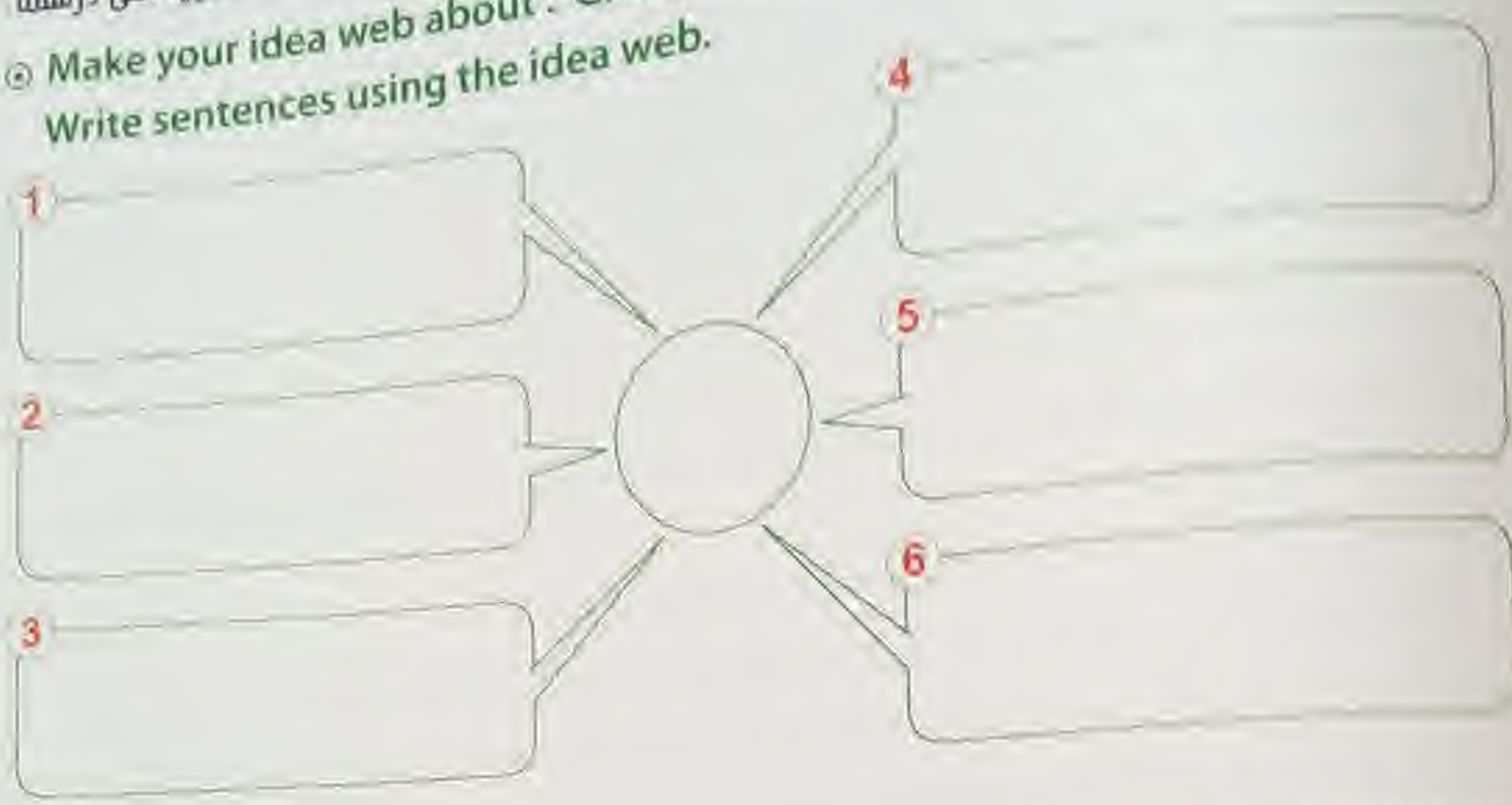
Part 2

الخطوة الرابعة : شبكة أفكار للكتابة

* يقوم الطالب بتكوين شبكة الأفكار الخاصة به (تكوين جمل) باستخدام المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التي درسها

Step 4 Your idea web

⊙ Make your idea web about : Green energy
Write sentences using the idea web.



الخطوة الخامسة : كتابة موضوعك

Step 5 Your writing

* بعد الخطوات السابقة يكون الطالب قادرا على كتابة موضوع إنشائي.

⊙ **Look at your idea web in step 4, then write your paragraph.**

....

....

....

....

....

....

✓ Writing check

بعد كتابة الفقرة قيم نفسك.

- Organization التنظيم	☐	- Spelling التهجي	☐
- Relevance of ideas ترابط الأفكار	☐	- Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم	☐
- Choice of vocabulary اختيار المفردات اللغوية	☐	- Grammar القواعد اللغوية	☐

Part 3

Reading Skill

مهـــارة القراءة

كيف تستخدم جزء مهارة القراءة

الخطوة الأولى

قراءة قطعة الفهم وتعلم كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة قطعة الفهم

1. Extracting information	١. استخراج معلومات
2. Giving the main idea	٢. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
3. Understanding reference	٣. فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير
4. Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context	٤. تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص
5. Critical thinking skill	٥. مهارة التفكير النقدى

الخطوة الثانية

بعد الانتهاء من الخطوة الأولى تدرب بنفسك على حل تدريبات قطعة الفهم



Unit 1 Coming home

الخطوة الأولى اقرأ وتعلم

Step 1 Read and Learn

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Mariam. My **daily** routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6:30 in the morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my breakfast and we have breakfast together. I go to school by bus with my friend Dina. I like music very much and we sometimes listen to **it**. My parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard and they get home late, so I often help to make dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   - **Mariam's daily routine**

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. How does Mariam go to school ?
   - **By bus**

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

3. Do you think that Mariam enjoys her daily routine ?
   - **Yes, I think so.**

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a. work b. **music** c. breakfast d. bus

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

5. Mariam gets up at ....
   a. **6 : 30** b. 7 : 30 c. 8 : 30 d. 9 : 00

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة في السياق

6. The underlined word "**daily**" means ....

a. yesterday b. tomorrow c. **every day** d. now

Step 2 Practise by yourself الخطوة الثانية تدرب بنفسك

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Shahana, I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap at the end of street where we live. My mum gets water from **it** every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop. I have two jobs to do when I **get home** from school. I feed chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes, I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?

....

2. Where is Shahana from ?

....

3. Do you think that Shahana is happy to help her brother and sister with their homework ?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....

a. tap b. shop
c. homework d. job

5. There are .... persons in Shahana's family.

a. five b. four c. three d. six

6. The underlined words "**get home**" means .... home.

a. find b. do c. arrive d. leave

Unit 2 How are you feeling ?

Step 1 Read and Learn

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ وتعلم

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's normal to get worried or to feel **sad** sometimes but what helps teenagers to feel happy ? We found five things that can help. Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep from eight to ten hours a night are much happier. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or if you live in the city go to a park. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try <u>**it**</u> ! You feel really good.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   - Happiness for teenagers

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. How many hours do young people sleep a night ?

   - They sleep from eight to ten hours a night.

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

3. What do you think makes teenagers happy ?

   - I think making new friends makes them happy.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined pronoun "<u>**it**</u>" refers to ....

a. **to be kind**
b. to be false
c. to be angry
d. to be unkind

Extracting information

5. Why do people need nature ?
   a. **To be happy** b. To be sad c. To be unhappy d. To be excited

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية في السياق

6. The underlined word "**sad**" means ....
   a. happy b. pleased c. **unhappy** d. brave

Practise by yourself

Step 2 Practise by yourself الخطوة الثانية تدرب بنفسك

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

People who go to the market are different. Some people go to the market to buy meat, chickens or fish. Others go to bring fresh fruits and vegetables. A few people go to markets to sell things and goods like clothes, tools and wood. Markets are often one day a week. Most people who go around the markets are often women but some men go, too. It's so difficult to find things you lose in the markets because they're noisy, crowded and people go everywhere. Markets are very noisy in the early morning and quite calm at noon because a lot of people leave the place and go back home. People who want to go to the market should write things in a small paper note to **remember them** next morning.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
2. What should people do before going to the market ?
3. Do you think it's easy to find things you lost in the market at noon ? Why ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. people b. sellers
   c. things you want to buy d. markets
5. Most people who go to markets are often ....
   a. children b. babies c. women d. men
6. "**Remember**" is the opposite of ....
   a. get b. forget c. remind d. repeat

Unit 3 Great jobs

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ وتعلم

Step 1 Read and Learn

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك

We know how **Ancient** Egyptian doctors helped **their** patients because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air to our lungs. They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain did, but they didn't know how important it was. Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   - Ancient Egyptian doctors.

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. Why did doctors use plants ?

   - To help people with burns and to stop infections.

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير الناقد

3. Do you think that the Ancient Egyptians were the first to understand things in medicine ?

   - Yes, I think so.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined word "**their**" refers to ....

   a. **doctors** b. nurses c. patients d. plants

Extracting information [illegible]

5. The heart ______ blood around the body.
   a. **pumps** b. digests c. makes d. does

Guessing the meaning of [illegible]

6. The underlined word "**Ancient**" means ______.
   a. **very old** b. new c. clever d. angry

Practise by yourself

Step 2 Practise by yourself الخطوة الثانية : تدرب بنفسك

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi !

My name's Adam and I want to write about the person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed. When she was young she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the **reason** I am proud of her ! In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in hospitals. I was in a hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy that she helped **me**.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
2. Do you think Mrs Karima Mohamed had a difficult life ? Why ?
3. How long did Adam stay in the hospital ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**me**" refers to ______.
   a. Karima b. Adam c. the doctor d. the teacher
5. Mrs Karima was very ______ to Adam in the hospital.
   a. kind b. bad c. unkind d. cruel
6. The underlined word "**reason**" means ______.
   a. game b. cause c. work d. way

Unit 4 Into the past

Step 1 Read and Learn

الخطوة الأولى اقرأ وتعلم

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2000 years old !
When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance to the city.
The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in. The Romans
enjoyed watching sport. This is stadium for Roman horse races. You can
watch races there today. Jerash has three Roman Theatres. The biggest
theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit there. This
temple is on a hill. There is an amazing view of the city from there.
I think it is important to learn about historic places around the world.
We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   - **- The city of Jerash**

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. What can you see from the temple ?
   - **- An amazing view of the city.**

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

3. Why do you think it is important to protect historic places ?
   - **- So that people can visit them in the future.**

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....

a. the North Theatre b. **the South Theatre**
c. the stadium d. the temple

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

5. There are three Roman .... in Jerash.

a. **Theatres** b. Races c. Entrances d. Cities

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context | تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

6. The underlined word "**watch**" means
a. play b. take c. make d. **see**

Practise by yourself

Step 2 Practise by yourself | الخطوة الثانية : تدرب بنفسك

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed and his family decided to go on a holiday for a week. They chose a holiday near the sea because everyone in the family enjoys the seaside. They went to Matrouh where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving, swimming and seeing a lot of sea life. They also enjoyed seeing the coloured fish.

Mr Mohamed's wife liked going on walks near the beach and watching sunset. **She** also liked fishing on a boat as it is her favourite hobby. She was pleased there. Mr Mohamed's son liked to go diving and do water sports. At noon, all the family went to the cinema, then they went to a restaurant to have their dinner. At the end of their holiday, they went shopping and bought some **lovely** presents to their friends. Really, all the family spent a wonderful holiday.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
2. Why do you think Mohamed and his family choose a holiday near the sea ?
3. What did they enjoy in Matrouh ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ....
   a. Mona b. Mohamed's mother
   c. Mohamed's wife d. Sara
5. They went to a restaurant to have ....
   a. breakfast b. dinner c. lunch d. snacks
6. "**Lovely**" means "...............".
   a. ugly b. beautiful c. polite d. impolite

Unit 5 Helping you, helping me

الخطوة الأولى اقرأ وتعلم

Step 1 Read and Learn

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school calls her a little princess because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher, Miss Minchin, starts being cruel to **her** because she has no money. She makes Sara works as a servant. Sara has to work very hard and doesn't get much food. However, Sara decides to behave like a real princess, so she is always kind and polite to everyone. One day, Sara finds some money. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a **beggar** and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange. She is very poor, but she is kind to beggars", she thinks.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a title to this passage.

- A little princess.

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. Why is Miss Minchin cruel to Sara ?

- Because she has no money.

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير الناقد

3. Do you think that Sara behaves like a princess ? Why ?

- Yes, I think so, because she is kind and generous to everyone.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined word "**her**" refers to ....

a. Miss Minchin b. **Sara** c. the beggar d. the baker

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

5. The baker thinks that Sara is ....

a. **strange** b. happy c. sad d. unkind

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

6. The underlined word "**beggar**" means someone who .... money and food.

a. eats   b. needs   c. pays   d. gives

Practise by yourself

Step 2 Practise by yourself   الخطوة الثانية

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our teachers think that computers are good for us. You can get a lot of information from the internet. There is more information on the internet than in the world's biggest library. You can also get friends all over the world. We can **send** e-mails to each other, watch news and get information. Computer games are great. On TV you can watch a spaceship, but in computer games you can fly it. But our teachers think computers are bad for children's health. In the past, children ran around and did sports. Now **they** just sit at home playing computer games.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. How do you think the internet is important ?

....

3. What did children do in the past ?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....

a. children of the past   b. children of today
c. parents   d. grandparents

5. In computer games, you can .... the spaceship.

a. make   b. take   c. fly   d. repair

6. "**Send**" is the opposite of " .... ".

a. repeat   b. receive   c. repair   d. rewrite

Unit 6 Different environments

الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ وتعلم

* اقرأ القطعة التالية وتعلم كيفية الإجابة واستخراج المهارات المطلوبة منك.

Step 1 Read and Learn

1 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is **further** from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too. The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. **Some** were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.

A. Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- A trip to Luxor Museum.

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. What were the oldest objects in the museum ?

- The tools that were made of metal and stone.

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

3. Do you think that rings and necklaces belonged to rich Egyptian families ?

- Yes, I think so.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

4. The underlined word "**Some**" refers to ....

a. the metals b. the stones c. the statues **d. the tools**

Extracting information | استخراج المعلومات

5. They saw .... while they were walking into the museum.
a. **statues** b. objects c. families d. coins

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context | تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في السياق

6. The underlined word "**further**" is the opposite of ....
a. **nearer** b. harder c. slower d. bigger

Practise by yourself

Step 2 Practise by yourself | الخطوة الثانية : تدرب بنفسك

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi Salma

How are you ? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss you. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Al-Gamal is leaving ! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad. I have some good news, too. Guess what ? My parents say I can go on the school trip to Amman. I am very **excited** ! There are many amazing places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait. We will enjoy a lot **there**. Also, there are many places to visit. I hope to meet you at the airport next Sunday.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
2. Where do you think Salma live ?
3. When will Salma's friend arrive in Amman ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....
a. Luxor b. Paris c. Amman d. Cairo

5. The trip to Amman will be in ....
a. October b. May c. March d. June

6. The underlined word "**excited**" means ....
a. sad b. happy c. sorry d. disappointed

Part 4 Student's follow up card
بطاقة متابعة يومية للطالب

Unit 1 — Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary
اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	يرسل رسالة نصية	block of flats	....
....	روتين (عمل متكرر)	interview	....
....	يومي - بشكل يومي	way	....
....	يفضل	partner	....
....	كنبة (أريكة)	activity	....

B Definitions

1. .... : your usual way of doing things, especially when you do them in a fixed order at the same time
2. .... : a tall building with more than one floor with flats for people to live in
3. .... : a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life

Circle the correct word :

1. I always help to make/do dinner.
2. We often listen to/hear music.
3. They get/leave home early for school.
4. Children like seeing/watching TV.

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	خط سكك حديدية	typical	....
....	مفزع - رهيب - فظيع	share	....
....	جذاب - فاتن	village	....
....	السجن	profile	....
....	كبير (الحجم)	tap	....
....	فقير	feed	....

B Definitions

1. .... : a place where people go when they do something wrong or bad
2. .... : people without enough money
3. .... : the metal road that a train travels on
4. .... : give food to a person, group or animal
5. .... : beautiful / nice to look at
6. .... : very bad
7. .... : something you turn on or off to get water

Circle the correct word :

1. I live/leave in a village.
2. I share/shake a room with my sister.
3. She does/makes her homework every day.
4. There is a tip/tap in the garden.

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر المعلومات بأهم الكلمات الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	دولاب ذو أدراج	wardrobe	....
....	حوض	cushions	....
....	ستائر	lamp	....
....	سجادة	window	....
....	كرسي بمسند	bookshelf	....
....	يخص / ينتمي	mirror	....

B Definitions

1. .... : a bowl for washing usually with taps in a bathroom, bedroom, etc.
2. .... : these are on the floor
3. .... : a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you
4. .... : they are next to your windows and you close them at night
5. .... : something that gives light
6. .... : a large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on
7. .... : it is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes
8. .... : it has drawers where you can put your clothes

Circle the correct word :

1. It's very niece/nice to see you.
2. Thank/Thanks for being my penfriend.
3. How/Who often do you visit your grandpa ?
4. I practice/practise my English with my penfriend.

Unit 2 — Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	بتواصل	repair
....	مهندس كمبيوتر (حاسبات)	street-food seller
....	كشك لبيع الطعام	calligraphy
....	موظف مركز اتصالات	shop worker
....	جناح / عنبر (في مستشفى)	sign language
....	ضابط شرطة	repair

B Definitions

1. .... : a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food
2. .... : take special care and attention to do something
3. .... : feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen
4. .... : you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system
5. .... : not able to hear anything or not able to hear well
6. .... : this person helps to keep people safe in the streets
7. .... : this person helps in a place which sells things

Circle the correct word :

1. Bassem is a police office/officer.
2. Dr Wafaa looks after children in this word/ward.
3. Make/Do sure that everything is ready.
4. Ayman is parking/barking his car.

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة	hanging	
	ميناء	grateful	
	نشارة	guest	
	حقيبة سفر	normal	
	حديقة الأزهر	skin	
	ببطء	carefully	
	مخطط	quietly	

B Definitions

1. .... : in the direction of, or closer to somebody / something
2. .... : an area of very dry land
3. .... : having a thin edge or point that can cut something or make a hole in something
4. .... : feeling happy about the good things in your life
5. .... : a ceremony in which people get married
6. .... : not paying enough attention to what you are doing
7. .... : usual, not different
8. .... : with long narrow lines of colour that are a different colour from the areas next to them

Circle the correct word :

1. She is talking/taking a selfie.
2. Hoda is sitting/setting behind Leila.
3. Who is standing on your left/lift ?
4. Try to do/make new friends.

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	اختار	pity	....
....	يجتاز / يمر	greetings	....
....	تهانينا / ألف مبروك	imagine	....
....	يقلق	empathy	....
....	صعب	suitable	....
....	يجيب / يرد	interview	....

B Definitions

1. .... : something you say to show you feel sad about something
2. .... : the ability to understand how someone feels

Circle the correct word :

1. I'm sorry/happy to hear that. I hope he gets better soon.
2. How are you filling/feeling ?
3. We went on a school tribe/trip last week.
4. There are amazed/amazing places to visit in Cairo.

Unit 3 — Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر [illegible]

A Vocabulary

.... طبيب جراح	final ....
.... ناشئ / حديث السن	nuclear scientist ....
.... تاريخ الميلاد	handball ....
.... بطل	treatments ....
.... راع / كفيل	sports coach ....
.... شخص أكبر سنا	competition ....

B Definitions

1. ....: an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
2. ....: someone teaches people how to play or improve a sport
3. ....: more advanced or older
4. ....: someone does experiments to study and find out about how things work
5. ....: a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal
6. ....: connected with young people or involving young people
7. ....: a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill

Circle the correct word :

1. He is 11. He is at a junior/senior school team.
2. Hassan Shehata is a sport/sports coach.
3. My birth place/date is 5th April, 1966.
4. To dye/die is to stop living.

Check your Vocabulary اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	كارثة طبيعية	pump	....
....	متطوع	earthquake	....
....	المخ	infection	....
....	جمعية خيرية	lungs	....
....	فخور	burn	....
....	طوارئ	heart	....

B Definitions

1. .... : an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need
2. .... : a terrible event, such as an earthquake
3. .... : something serious or dangerous that you need to do/ something quickly about
4. .... : a disease in a part of your body
5. .... : it tells the parts of our body what to do
6. .... : someone who works for no money to help people
7. .... : they take in air and help us to breathe
8. .... : an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp

Circle the correct word :

1. The mind/brain is in your head.
2. Brains/Lungs help us to breathe.
3. Earthquakes are natural/man-made disasters.

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك [illegible]

A Vocabulary

....	يوافق	nursing	....
....	جامع القمامة	championship	....
....	خائف / مرعوب	manager	....
....	بطولي / نبيل	organisation	....
....	يعني / يقصد	street cleaners	....
....	جريدة	society	....

B Definitions

1. .... : frightened or afraid that something bad could happen
2. .... : very brave or great
3. .... : a person whose job is to organise people in a company or business

Circle the correct word :

1. Hero/Heroic means very brave or great.
2. This bottle contains/includes oil.
3. In other/another words, Sayed is brave.
4. Doing/Making something useful is very important.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	قوس / قنطرة	ruins	....
....	مسرح	entrance	....
....	قلعة / حصن	facts	....
....	هرم	view	....
....	تاريخي	awesome	....
....	معبد	stadium	....

B Definitions

1. .... : concerning history or connected with the past
2. .... : an entrance to another place
3. .... : put your hand (or another part of your body) on something
4. .... : a person who can show you round a place
5. .... : the broken parts that are left of a building or city
6. .... : a place where Muslims pray
7. .... : what you can see from the top of something

Circle the correct word :

1. This is a history/historic building.
2. This building is terrible/awesome. It's amazing.
3. I don't like noisy/quiet sounds.
4. Ali is quiet/quite tall.

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4

Check your Vocabulary
اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	وعاء / سلطانية	figure	....
....	نبات / ورق البردى	necklace	....
....	متحف الفن الإسلامى	Museum of History	....
....	أداة	metal	....
....	إناء من الفخار	mask	....
....	متحف الفنون	coin	....

Circle the correct word :

1. Farmers keep water in pots/ puts.
2. Who prepared/ repaired your broken chair ?
3. All students came expect/ except Baleegh.
4. Can you run/ ruin very fast ?

Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary
اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	أحجار	pharaoh	....
....	سائحون	subheading	....
....	البيئة	local people	....
....	تلوث	heading	....
....	سياحة	needle	....
....	يتلف/يدمر	debate	....

Circle the correct word :

1. Tourism makes/ brings money to Egypt.
2. Cars make/ do pollution.
3. You should pay/ bay for what you buy.

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	غسل الأوانى	distance	....
....	حسن المعاملة	apartment	....
....	إخراج القمامة	messy	....
....	الطبخ	stranger	....
....	الاعتناء بأخى	random	....
....	ترتيب / تنظيم الأشياء	fantastic	....

B Definitions

1. .... : the quality صفة of being kind-generous, helpful and caring towards other people
2. .... : become friends with someone for the first time
3. .... : hold something in your hands and take it from one place to another
4. .... : a person who owns and runs a shop
5. .... : extremely good; excellent
6. .... : a person you do not know

Circle the correct word :

1. Women play an important rule/ role in society.
2. Mothers always eat/ feed their babies.
3. Don't pack/ pick flowers in the garden.
4. Rich people should donate/ receive money to the poor.

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4

Check your Vocabulary اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	يطعم	behave	....
....	فاسي	disabled	....
....	يلتقط	local	....
....	متطوع	beggar	....
....	يتبرع	servant	....
....	مدرسة داخلية	community	....

Circle the correct word :

1. When you finish eating, you should wash/wash up.
2. Thanks for your kindness/kind.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	يشارك / يتقاسم	blog	....
....	رأى	social media	....
....	يقترح	passport	....
....	سيدة أعمال	perhaps	....
....	مقال فى جريدة	decision	....
....	تبرع	weekend	....

Circle the correct word :

1. You can't leave your country without a password/passport.
2. Society/Social media are important.

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

.... جفاف	polluted ....
.... حملة	bar chart ....
.... فيضان	presentation ....
.... قمامة / مخلفات	volunteer ....
.... تلوث الماء	climate change ....
.... تلوث الهواء	line graph ....

B Definitions

1. .... : a diagram or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts
2. .... : connected to protecting the environment
3. .... : changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing
4. .... : the lines that have numbers / information on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side)
5. .... : a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before
6. .... : dirt and dangerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic

Circle the correct word :

1. Air population/pollution is dangerous.
2. Wet/Dry weather causes bad fires in Australia.
3. Fewer/Less people use cars nowadays.
4. Everest is very tall/high.

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	يحدد موقع / يقع في	wildlife	....
....	سفينة	environment matters	....
....	قناة (مائية)	podcast	....
....	تسليط الضوء	nature reserve	....
....	آثار	coral reefs	....
....	قطن	green energy	....

Circle the correct word :

1. Muslims pray in museums/mosques.
2. Many fish are bought/caught in the sea.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check your Vocabulary

اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

A Vocabulary

....	بلاستيك	suggestion	....
....	رسم تخطيط	city centre	....
....	مشروع دراسى	reuse	....
....	ضفة نهر	paper	....
....	يهدف	volunteer	....
....	أكياس بلاستيك	vote	....

Circle the correct word :

1. The Egyptians opened the Suez Canal/River in 1869.
2. Tourist/Tourism is very important for Egypt.

Part 5

General Exercises on all units for Al-Azhar section

تدريبات عامة على كل الوحدات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Unit 1

1 **Finish the following dialogues :**

A. **Tarek** : What do you do at the weekend ?
Yasser : ....

B. **Waiter** : .... ?
Rana : We'd like fish with rice, please.

2 **Read and match :**

1. My favourite subjects are	a. with my parents.
2. Shall I help you	b. on his bookshelf.
3. I live in a block of flats	c. carry your books ?
4. There are two beds	d. maths and English.
	e. in my room.

Unit 2

1 **Finish the following dialogues :**

A. **Ayman** : I've passed my maths test.
Omar : ....

B. **Mona** : .... ?
Huda : At the weekend, I usually get up early.

2 **Read and match :**

1. Why is Huda waving	a. sports today because she hurt her leg.
2. Maya and Rami are texting	b. their cousins in Canada.
3. What game is Osama playing	c. on the computer ?
4. Ola is not doing	d. to those girls?
	e. where he is going.

Unit 3

1 Finish the following dialogues :

A. **Ali** : Who is your favourite hero ?

Tamer : ....

B. **Nesma** : .... ?

Basma : My grandfather used to live in the country.

2 Read and match :

1. When my mother was 25, she worked	a. more than thirty years.
2. My grandfather stopped working	b. 1995 to 2010.
3. My family first visited the island of	c. in a bank.
4. Aunt Leila lived in England from	d. Crete ten years ago.
	e. in 2015.

Unit 4

1 Finish the following dialogues :

A. **Ola** : Which historic places would you like to visit ?

Mona : ....

B. **Customer** : .... ?

Ticket officer : Yes, you can buy the tickets online.

2 Read and match :

1. The people were walking in the park when	a. she was walking up that big hill.
2. Manal got thirsty while	b. he saw an old friend.
3. Most of the people were sleeping	c. it started to rain.
4. As Mr Badr was walking to work	d. he finished that funny story.
	e. when the earthquake started.

Unit 5

1 Finish the following dialogues :

A. Adam : Do you have to do jobs at home ?

Tarek : ....

B. Menna : .... ?

Toka : I work as a volunteer for a charity.

2 Read and match :

1. Do you have to look after	a. up after they made a model for the project.
2. Ali has to put	b. out the rubbish; I did it this morning.
3. You don't have to take	c. your baby sister at the weekend ?
4. The teacher told the students to tidy	d. his toys away when he finishes playing with them.
	e. eating his breakfast.

Unit 6

1 Finish the following dialogues :

A. Salma : Where is the city of Port Said located ?

Rashed : ....

B. Huda : .... ?

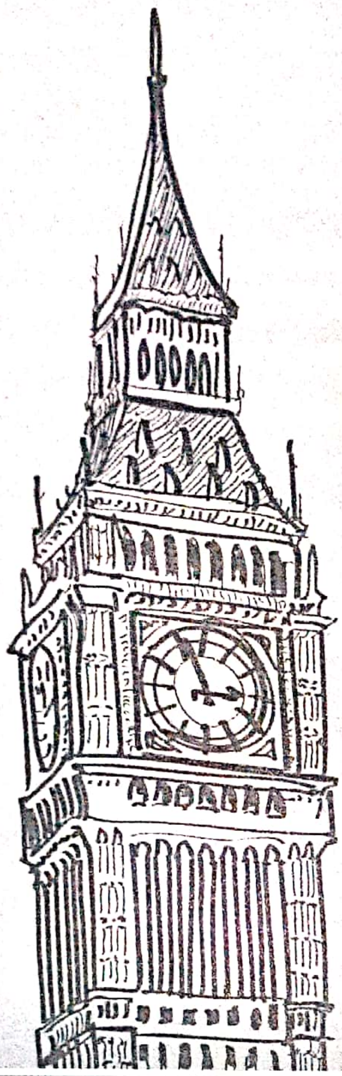
Rawan : The climate change is a change in temperature and rainfall.

2 Read and match :

1. A train is not as	a. well as they did last week.
2. The drought this year is not as	b. he likes playing computer games.
3. The football players are not playing as	c. fast as a plane.
	d. a delicious dish.
4. Tamer likes reading as much as	e. dangerous as it was last year.

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE



NEW HELLO!

By a group of supervisors

مفكـرة الإجابـات

Answer Notebook

ENGLISH

خاص بالسادة المعلمين

2nd Prep. 2021

FIRST TERM

إجابات كتاب الشرح

الصف الثانى الإعدادى

Unit (1)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ **Key Vocabulary**

1. b. way 2. a. text
3. c. sofa 4. d. daily
5. a. routine 6. d. interview
7. b. block

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

8. a. makes 9. c. prefer

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. d. leaves 11. a. lessons
12. b. baker's 13. a. interests

⇨ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. a. on 15. c. help
16. a. gets

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. b. watches 2. a. doesn't
3. c. How 4. d. always
5. a. usually do 6. c. Do

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

7. b. Does 8. b. make
9. c. often 10. d. Are you
11. b. don't 12. a. do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. always don't ⟶ don't always
2. does ⟶ do
3. listens ⟶ listen
4. Do ⟶ Does
5. doing ⟶ do

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

6. play sometimes ⟶ sometimes play
7. is ⟶ does
8. always ⟶ never
9. do ⟶ does

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. rises 2. do you do
3. doesn't like 4. gets
5. Do you visit

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Sherifa and her family
2. d. friend
3. c. 5 4. b. 6:30

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, of course.
2. What time do you get up ?
3. What do you do before going to school ?

4. Do you listen to music on your way to school ?
5. I play sports.
6. Yes, I do.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. have　2. a. sofa
3. c. interview　4. b. texting
5. a. spent　6. c. country
7. a. break　8. d. do
9. d. never　10. a. don't

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. cooks always ⟶ always cooks
2. speaking ⟶ speak
3. Does ⟶ Do
4. Where ⟶ How

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. Does　2. rains
3. does　4. doesn't
5. makes

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. terrible　2. a. line
3. c. Feed　4. a. tap
5. d. typical　6. b. share
7. a. village　8. c. prison

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

9. a. carry　10. a. garden
11. c. goats　12. a. together

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

13. c. profile
14. b. grandparents
15. d. suggested
16. b. research
17. a. adventures

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

18. a. from　19. b. wrong
20. a. to bring　21. c. with

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. c. got　2. d. come
3. d. bring　4. c. Have
5. a. can

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

6. d. shall　7. b. hasn't
8. d. can't　9. d. do
10. b. can

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. Have ⟶ Has
2. helps ⟶ help
3. can ⟶ can't
4. has ⟶ have
5. can ⟶ can't

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

6. get → got
7. shall → can
8. going → go

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. got　　2. Shall I get
3. I have　　4. play

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Where is it ?
2. When did you move there ?
3. Is it big ?
4. Yes, I do.
5. I like football.
6. I practise it at the club.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. attractive　　2. b. kind
3. d. ugly　　4. d. Goats
5. a. Picnic　　6. b. adventures
7. b. moved　　8. d. got
9. b. go　　10. d. hasn't

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. brought → bring
2. get → got
3. Have → Can
4. Do → Shall

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. wardrobe　　2. a. carpets
3. d. drawers　　4. b. curtains
5. a. basin　　6. d. mirror

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

7. b. sunlight　　8. c. reserves
9. c. armchair　　10. a. nearby

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

11. a. description
12. a. nationality
13. d. floor　　14. penfriend

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. c. open　　16. b. break
17. b. walk　　18. a. dressed

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Sam　　2. b. Germany
3. d. breakfast　　4. c. 8

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. match　　2. a. subjects
3. c. mirror　　4. b. close
5. d. belongs　　6. b. idea
7. a. brings　　8. a. next
9. c. behind　　10. c. with

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. up → to 2. being → be
3. At → on 4. on → in

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 1

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. India 2. b. sister
3. a. village 4. b. early

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I live in a village.
2. Where is it ?
3. Yes, it is.
4. Who do you live with ?
5. How many brothers and sisters do you have ?
6. Yes, I do.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. My room.
2. Because he keeps books and toys. It is also large.
3. Haytham's house.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. small
5. b. ground floor
6. c. swings

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. after 2. a. take
3. b. text 4. c. prison
5. b. beautiful 6. a. basin
7. c. mirror 8. a. drink
9. d. live 10. b. Has

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. like 2. gets
3. doesn't live 4. Have

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. have → has
2. get → got
3. walk → walks
4. works usually → usually works

E. Writing

7. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Unit (2)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. Park 2. b. ward
3. c. computer engineer
4. a. police officer
5. a. sign 6. c. calligraphy
7. b. stall
8. d. call-centre worker

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

9. a. deaf
10. b. communicate
11. c. cook

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

12. a. art 13. c. fountain
14. a. skills 15. d. artist

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. b. on 17. b. quite
18. b. have 19. b. make

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. d. is shopping
2. d. is 3. c. do
4. b. isn't 5. b. make

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

6. d. am taking
7. b. are you playing
8. a. get 9. c. are running
10. a. is playing

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. drive ⟶ driving
2. visit ⟶ is visiting
3. spending ⟶ spend
4. yesterday ⟶ now

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

5. watching ⟶ are watching
6. go ⟶ goes
7. doesn't ⟶ isn't
8. isn't ⟶ doesn't

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. are singing 2. doesn't study
3. are growing 4. doing
5. are you doing

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. ward 2. b. delicious
3. b. police officer
4. a. breakfast

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm a street - food seller
2. Where are you parking your food stall ?

3. Why ?
4. Who do you prepare sandwiches for ? / What do you do ?
5. They start buying their breakfast at 6 in the morning.
6. Yes, they do.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. fountain 2. c. sewing
3. b. deaf 4. c. cook
5. c. spends 6. c. job
7. a. communicate
8. b. is visiting
9. c. is staying
10. c. is selling

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. writes ⟶ is writing
2. eat ⟶ eating
3. make ⟶ makes
4. doing ⟶ do

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. do you do
2. Are you watching
3. Do you watch
4. doesn't speak
5. isn't washing

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. c. guests 2. b. wedding
3. c. port 4. b. carefully
5. a. happily 6. c. excitedly
7. b. hungrily

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

8. b. striped 9. treats
10. c. desert

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

11. b. take 12. b. guess
13. c. suitcases

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. a. texts 15. d. did
16. b. for 17. a. smoking
18. c. about

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. c. excitedly 2. a. well
3. b. lazily 4. a. loudly
5. d. carefully

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

6. b. quickly 7. c. good
8. b. well 9. d. heavily
10. b. quietly

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨SB and WB Exercises

1. bad → badly
2. sad → sadly
3. kind → kindly

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

4. happy → happily
5. Faster → Fast
6. easy → easily
7. good → well

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets :

1. quickly 2. well
3. badly 4. easily
5. quietly

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. normal 2. a. texts
3. c. exciting 4. a. worried

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. To Al-Azhar Park.
2. Why ?
3. With my family.
4. How did you go there ?
5. We had lunch and took some photos.
6. Did you have a nice time there ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. middle 2. c. invite
3. d. teenager 4. b. sharp
5. a. alone 6. b. catch
7. c. dry 8. a. fast
9. a. careful 10. d. carelessly

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. quiet → quietly
2. Why → How
3. heavy → heavily
4. happy → happily

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets :

1. loudly 2. lazily
3. fast 4. hard
5. early

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨Key Vocabulary

1. c. empathy
2. b. Congratulations
3. c. interview 4. a. pity
5. c. greeting

⇨SB and WB Exercises

6. d. news 7. b. sharing

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

8. c. problems 9. b. imagine
10. b. Guess

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

11. d. for 12. b. practice
13. a. succeeded
14. c. pity 15. a. had
16. b. show 17. d. had

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Great to see you, too!
2. I'm fine.
3. And you ?
4. Congratulations!
5. What about you ?
6. What should I do ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. pass 2. d. amazing
3. b. bank 4. b. useful
5. c. get 6. b. missed
7. a. such 8. a. in
9. c. with 10. a. forward

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. happy → happily
2. laugh → laughing
3. speaks → is speaking
4. pass → passing

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 2

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. parking 2. c. hot
3. a. tourists 4. b. cold

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'd like a shirt, please.
2. What size do you want ?
3. No, I don't like this colour.
4. What colour do you prefer ?
5. Is this good ?
6. Here you are.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. The new preparatory school.
2. The school library.
3. Making notes is very important.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. boring 5. a. It's near
6. a. once

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. parking
2. c. calligraphy
3. c. sign 4. b. feeling
5. a. cook 6. d. hard
7. a. lazily
8. d. are painting 9. b. smiling

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. learning 2. study
3. watching 4. eat

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are ⟶ Is
2. drinking ⟶ drink
3. having ⟶ have
4. feeling ⟶ feel

E. Writing

7. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Unit (3)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ **Key Vocabulary**

1. c. sports coach
2. a. surgeon 3. d. scientist
4. c. patron 5. d. junior
6. b. hero 7. c. Handball

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

8. b. female 9. c. heart
10. d. died

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

11. c. brave 12. c. World Cup
13. c. goal

⇨ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. b. doing 15. c. became
16. d. do

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. c. won 2. c. was
3. c. became 4. c. did
5. c. live 6. b. played

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

7. b. left 8. c. had
9. c. go 10. a. was
11. b. I was 12. a. watched
13. c. Did

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. start ⟶ started
2. live ⟶ lived
3. were ⟶ was
4. get ⟶ got

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

5. gave ⟶ give
6. had ⟶ have

7. learns → learn
8. doesn't → didn't

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. spent 2. saw
3. didn't speak 4. Did
5. go

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Egyptian 2. a. Africa
3. c. Tunisia 4. d. 27

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Who is your favourite footballer ?
2. What team does he play for ?
3. Because he scores a lot of goals.
4. Al Ahli. 5. And you ?
6. I often watch them on TV.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. met 2. c. got
3. d. ago 4. a. lost
5. b. sharks 6. a. improve
7. c. junior 8. b. players
9. b. patient 10. b. attacked

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. was → were
2. do → did
3. were → was
4. won → win

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. studied 2. was
3. weren't 4. were
5. Did you meet
6. used

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ **Key Vocabulary**

1. c. disaster 2. d. emergency
3. b. volunteer 4. d. lungs
5. a. heart 6. b. infection

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

7. a. charity 8. d. lives
9. c. air

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. c. blood 11. c. fire
12. c. healthy 13. b. fill
14. d. stopped

⇨ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. b. down 16. d. with
17. d. for

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨SB and WB Exercises

1. b. live 2. d. to
3. a. use 4. b. to have
5. a. didn't 6. d. I didn't

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

7. d. used 8. c. did
9. d. be 10. b. didn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨SB and WB Exercises

1. used ⟶ use
2. do ⟶ did
3. for ⟶ to

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

4. am ⟶ was
5. used ⟶ use
6. being ⟶ be
7. had ⟶ have

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. sing 2. use to
3. use 4. didn't use
5. live

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. doctors 2. c. plants
3. a. Yes 4. b. plants

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. My grandfather
2. He was a doctor.
3. Where did he work ?
4. Was he a surgeon ?
5. What did he use to do ?
6. Yes, I'm.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. doing 2. d. serious
3. c. ideas 4. d. breathe
5. b. infection 6. d. use
7. a. fly 8. b. charity
9. c. Did 10. d. poor

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. of ⟶ to
2. didn't ⟶ don't
3. used ⟶ use
4. Do ⟶ Did

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. did you use 2. be
3. used 4. didn't use
5. Did you use to

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. a. heroic
2. d. street cleaners
3. a. manager
4. c. championship
5. a. rubbish collectors
6. a. scared 7. c. Nursing

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

8. b. education 9. c. captain
10. d. include 11. d. Island

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

12. c. reason 13. d. confuse
14. b. introduced
15. c. firefighter

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. d. other 17. c. best
18. b. study 19. a. reason

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. doctor 2. b. hospital
3. d. 2020 4. a. Yes, he did.

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What do you mean ?
2. In other words
3. I agree.
4. What do you think of street cleaners ?
5. Why ?
6. We should respect and reward them.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. health 2. c. than
3. c. Island 4. d. go
5. b. used to play
6. a. society 7. c. got
8. c. rubbish 9. b. heroic
10. c. firefighter

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. next ⟶ last
2. win ⟶ won
3. visited ⟶ visit
4. for ⟶ to

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 3

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. To study very hard
2. b. A nurse
3. a. In a hospital
4. b. To pay for her studies

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. He is a doctor.
2. Where does he work ?
3. Does he get money ?
4. No, he doesn't.
5. Yes, I do.
6. Are you proud of him ?

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. I think he liked children.
2. Because his father was an important doctor.
3. Dr Magdi Yacoub's life.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. a. Magdy Yacoub
5. c. not usual
6. d. Bilbeis

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. proud 2. d. jewellery
3. a. volunteer 4. b. different
5. a. championship
6. d. mean 7. b. use
8. a. pumps 9. a. drive
10. b. did

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. was 2. helped
3. did 4. use

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. go ⟶ went
2. used to ⟶ use to
3. Found ⟶ Find
4. buys ⟶ bought

E. Writing

7. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Unit (4)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. c. mosques 2. c. ruins
3. b. awesome 4. a. ancient
5. b. statues 6. a. entrance
7. c. view 8. b. temples
9. b. theatre

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

10. b. imagine 11. b. visit
12. a. guide

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

13. c. races   14. c. protect
15. a. behave

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. a. have   17. c. in
18. c. of

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. c. mustn't   2. b. must
3. d. must   4. c. do

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

5. b. mustn't   6. b. must
7. c. must   8. c. mustn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. mustn't → must
2. arrives → arrive
3. must → mustn't

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

4. been → be
5. mustn't → must
6. must → mustn't
7. gets → get
8. must → mustn't

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. mustn't   2. mustn't
3. drive   4. play
5. must

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Last week
2. b. Cousins
3. a. History   4. c. Ruins

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, of course.
2. Where are the pyramids ?
3. No, they aren't.
4. You can walk / You can take a taxi / on foot.
5. Who built them ?
6. How tall is the Great Pyramid ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. ruins   2. c. recommend
3. a. review   4. b. rules
5. c. dates   6. d. historic
7. a. facts   8. a. mustn't
9. a. must   10. b. must

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. mustn't → must
2. buying → buy
3. mustn't to → mustn't
4. doing → do

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. make   2. arrive

3. follow　　4. be
5. help

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words :

Student's own answer

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. a. papyrus　　2. d. necklace
3. c. clay　　4. a. ring
5. c. vase　　6. a. tool
7. b. coins

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

8. c. price　　9. b. squares
10. c. mixed
11. b. insects

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

12. d. popular　　13. c. objects
14. a. officer
15. a. runner
16. a. design

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

17. b. from
18. c. of　　19. a. from

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. b. when　　2. b. sat
3. b. called　　4. b. was taking

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

5. c. was cooking
6. b. was he doing
7. c. doing　　8. d. working

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. walked → were walking
2. travelled → were travelling
3. flew → were flying

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

4. are → were
5. was → were
6. read → was reading
7. watch → watching
8. is → was

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. were you doing
2. was
3. was cooking 4. studying
5. was watching

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. senet　　2. b. 30
3. c. wood　　4. b. on the floor

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. When are you open, sir ?

2. Are you open all the days of the week ?
3. Yes, you can.
4. How much does a ticket cost ?
5. Yes, of course.
6. Thank you.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. except 2. c. vase
3. b. objects 4. c. clay
5. a. ingredients 6. d. figure
7. d. papyrus
8. c. was helping
9. c. was reading
10. d. came

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. travel → travelling
2. while → when
3. see → saw
4. writes → was writing

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. was reading
2. was cooking
3. were you doing
4. were

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. d. pollution 2. b. damages
3. b. tourism 4. b. Needle

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

5. b. pay 6. c. company
7. b. designs

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

8. c. protect 9. b. sink
10. a. earthquake
11. c. report

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. b. for 13. d. up
14. c. for 15. b. give

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. A large stone
2. a. In England
3. c. Designs 4. a. In London

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Where is it ?
2. How old is it ?
3. It got to England in a special ship.
4. How big is it ?
5. Wonderful. 6. I think so.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. mean 2. a. brings
3. c. debate 4. b. damage
5. b. includes 6. b. label
7. b. map 8. c. was cooking
9. b. were sleeping
10. b. while

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. see → saw
2. travel → was travelling
3. must → mustn't
4. mustn't → must

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 4

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. pots and bowls
2. b. clay
3. d. River Nile 4. c. clever

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm reading a book about the stone circles of Senegambia.
2. They're in Senegal and Gambia.
3. Where are they ?
4. Why are they important ?
5. Can tourists visit them ?
6. Yes, they are.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. The Ancient Egyptians.
2. I think they were clever.
3. To paint around their eyes.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. objects 5. d. keep safe
6. b. mirror

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. amazing 2. c. protect
3. a. laughing 4. d. River
5. b. race 6. c. saw
7. a. explain
8. c. was reading
9. a. were you doing
10. a. drop

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. mustn't 2. listen
3. was reading 4. came

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. fall ⟶ fell
2. must ⟶ mustn't
3. you must ⟶ must you do
4. slept ⟶ were sleeping

E. Writing

7. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Unit (5)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ **Key Vocabulary**

1. a. distance　2. b. fantastic
3. b. stranger　4. a. wash
5. c. random　6. b. tidy
7. b. put

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

8. b. thief
9. d. surprised
10. d. sunglasses
11. c. plan

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

12. d. snacks
13. c. advertisement
14. c. lift　15. d. teenager

⇨ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

16. b. away　17. b. make
18. b. about

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. a. has to
2. a. don't have to
3. d. to take　4. b. should

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

5. d. run　6. c. have to
7. b. should　8. c. to practise
9. a. don't have to

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ **SB and WB Exercises**

1. walks ⟶ walk
2. should ⟶ shouldn't
3. doesn't ⟶ don't

⇨ **El-Moasser Exercises**

4. does ⟶ do
5. hasn't ⟶ doesn't
6. can ⟶ should
7. should ⟶ shouldn't
8. doing ⟶ do

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. has　2. have
3. don't have　4. doesn't
5. Do you have

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. On a ride
2. b. Hot
3. c. Hat and sunglasses
4. b. cars

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, I do.
2. Does he have tests, too ?
3. To the laboratory.
4. Do we have science the next lesson ?
5. Are you good at science ?
6. He is helpful.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. fantastic
2. c. holiday
3. b. give 4. a. Random
5. a. lucky 6. b. smile
7. c. wheelchair
8. a. should
9. a. has to 10. c. have to

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. shouldn't → should
2. doing → do
3. have → has
4. to eat → eat

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb/ words in brackets :

1. Does Nabil have
2. listen
3. do you have to
4. doesn't have
5. don't have to

Lessons 3& 4

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. community
2. c. donated
3. b. disabled 4. d. private
5. b. volunteer 6. a. cruel
7. c. behaves

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

8. b. market
9. a. cafe 10. d. princess

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

11. b. guess 12. d. generous
13. a. school books

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. c. get 15. b. up
16. b. as

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. c. where 2. a. that
3. c. who 4. b. which
5. b. who

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

6. a. where 7. a. which
8. b. who 9. d. which
10. c. that 11. c. where

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

1. which ⟶ who
2. where ⟶ which
3. where ⟶ which

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

4. when ⟶ where
5. where ⟶ who
6. who ⟶ which
7. which ⟶ where
8. when ⟶ where

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the relative pronouns in brackets :

1. who 2. which
3. where 4. who

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. teacher 2. d. English
3. d. preparatory school
4. b. school books

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I work for a charity.
2. I help old people.
3. What do you do for them ?
4. Are there many disabled old people ?
5. Is it an interesting work/job ?
6. Yes, of course.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. pick 2. c. cruel
3. b. pass 4. a. role
5. d. disabled
6. b. recommend
7. c. where 8. b. beggar
9. d. which 10. a. who

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. where ⟶ which
2. which ⟶ where
3. which ⟶ who
4. who ⟶ which

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of relative pronouns in brackets :

1. what 2. which
3. who 4. who
5. which

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. blog 2. c. passport
3. b. donation 4. c. social

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

5. c. donated 6. a. decided
7. c. doing 8. a. agree

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

9. c. laboratory 10. d. canteen
11. b. corner
12. d. sunny

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. c. away 14. c. without
15. d. give 16. b. see

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. A sandwich
2. a. On Friday
3. c. Street corner
4. a. He gave me a big smile

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What should I do ?
2. Great idea!
3. You should start running short distances.
4. How long should I run ?
5. Don't run.
6. What about food ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. donate
2. b. passport
3. c. unusual
4. b. businesswoman
5. c. make
6. a. perhaps
7. b. agree 8. d. where
9. b. which 10. a. who

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. which ⟶ who
2. who ⟶ which
3. when ⟶ which
4. where ⟶ which

5. Write an email of NINETY (90) words :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 5

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. 32
2. b. businesswoman
3. c. million 4. a. people

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. How do you help them ?
2. I am washing up.
3. Yes, I do.
4. What else do you do ?
5. Who told/taught you to do so ?
6. yes, I do.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the passage then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. working as a volunteer.
2. They are useful.
3. To help old and sick animals.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. Mrs Nahla
5. c. leave rubbish
6. b. collect

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. behaves 2. b. random
3. d. donate 4. c. put
5. b. fantastic 6. c. distance
7. b. feed 8. a. who
9. b. don't have to
10. c. where

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. has to 2. buy
3. who 4. where

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. wouldn't → shouldn't
2. have → have to
3. where → which
4. walking → to walk

E. Writing

7. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Unit (6)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. environment
2. d. drought
3. c. presentation
4. a. air pollution
5. c. flood 6. b. graph
7. c. polluted

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

8. a. protecting 9. c. causes
10. b. warmer

➪ El-Moasser Exercises

11. b. shows
12. d. quiet 13. b. planet

➪ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. c. on 15. b. made

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➪ SB and WB Exercises

1. a. more polluted
2. c. greener than
3. b. higher
4. c. more interesting
5. d. as fast as

➪ El-Moasser Exercises

6. d. important as
7. d. as much as
8. a. taller than
9. a. the best player
10. c. as hot as 11. c. big as
12. a. more dangerous

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

➪ SB and WB Exercises

1. taller ⟶ tall
2. comfortable ⟶ more comfortable
3. bad ⟶ worse
4. as not ⟶ not as

➪ El-Moasser Exercises

5. serious ⟶ serious as
6. as wet ⟶ as wet as
7. better ⟶ good
8. more ⟶ as

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjective in brackets :

1. more comfortable
2. quieter 3. better
4. hotter 5. more relaxing

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm reading a book.
2. About climate change.
3. What's that ?4. Yes, it is
5. Why ? 6. How ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. pollution 2. b. Drought
3. b. news 4. b. air
5. b. planet 6. c. Dangerous
7. c. volunteer 8. a. a shot
9. a. as serious as.
10. d. more difficult

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. hot ⟶ hotter
2. most ⟶ more
3. then ⟶ than
4. as hot ⟶ hot as

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets :

1. greener
2. less/more attractive

3. less/more interesting
4. more/less beautiful
5. newer

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨Key Vocabulary

1. c. cotton 2. b. tourism
3. b. canal 4. b. reserve
5. c. coral reefs 6. a. monuments

⇨SB and WB Exercises

7. a. tourism 8. b. spotlight
9. c. pyramids 10. c. coast

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

11. b. stop 12. d. owner
13. c. suggest

⇨Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. b. in 15. a. for
16. b. As a result

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨SB and WB Exercises

1. b. is visited
2. b. are caught
3. d. known 4. b. visited
5. b. used 6. d. is recycled

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

7. d. is made 8. c. written
9. b. by
10. d. are given
11. a. located 12. c. Are

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

⇨SB and WB Exercises

1. damage ⟶ are sometimes damaged
2. finding ⟶ found
3. has ⟶ are visited

⇨El-Moasser Exercises

4. took ⟶ taken
5. visiting ⟶ visited
6. did ⟶ done
7. asked ⟶ is asked

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets :

1. located 2. is grown
3. made 4. picked
5. known

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Tanta 2. a. north
3. b. its delicious sweets
4. a. cotton

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I live in Giza.
2. Where is it located ?

3. What is it known for ?
4. Where do you live ?
5. Luxor Temple
6. Ok ! I will surely do.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. mosque 2. b. famous
3. b. canal 4. b. ship
5. a. protect 6. d. camel
7. b. coral 8. a. is helped
9. b. drunk 10. a. is read

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. known → is known
2. growing → grown
3. have → are
4. rode → ridden

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of verb in brackets :

1. is visited 2. are destroyed
3. are cut 4. are made
5. are these books made

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

⇨ Key Vocabulary

1. b. riverbank
2. b. centre
3. c. aim 4. b. suggestions

⇨ SB and WB Exercises

5. b. protect 6. a. remind
7. a. including 8. a. problem

⇨ El-Moasser Exercises

9. b. solve
10. a. Recycling
11. d. water 12. c. reuse

⇨ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. d. of 14. c. to
15. c. do

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. ten 2. a. clean up
3. c. near 4. d. rubbish

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What did you do yesterday ?
2. What was it about ?
3. Fantastic !
4. We can recycle water.
5. Great idea !
6. What else can we do ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. careful 2. a. lie on
3. c. importance
4. b. pollute 5. c. smoke
6. b. collected 7. c. market
8. c. explained 9. a. larger
10. a. as expensive as

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. bad → worse
2. than → as
3. making → made
4. reading → read

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer

Test yourself on Unit 6

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Nile
2. c. black honey
3. c. monuments 4. b. beautiful

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm thinking about a serious problem.
2. What is it ?
3. What can we do ?
4. How ? 5. Great idea.
6. We can also share our teacher.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Volunteers.
2. They're very good.
3. Because they found so much rubbish.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. learn
5. a. Mr Hassan
6. d. a, b & c

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. environment 2. c. flood
3. c. relaxing 4. c. change
5. c. canal 6. b. related
7. d. delicious 8. c. hot as
9. c. is grown 10. a. as

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb/ adjectives in brackets :

1. more polluted
2. hotter 3. Faster
4. is known

6. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. hotter → hot
2. as noisy → noisier
3. as → than
4. far → further

E. Writing

7. Write an email of NINETY (90) words on :

Student's own answer